

Lectures on Tibetan religious culture: an intermediate textbook of Tibetan, Part I.

Sopa, Geshe Lhundup s.l.: s.n., 1972?

https://digital.library.wisc.edu/1711.dl/UDTUGVREUOJYE8I

http://rightsstatements.org/vocab/InC/1.0/

The libraries provide public access to a wide range of material, including online exhibits, digitized collections, archival finding aids, our catalog, online articles, and a growing range of materials in many media.

When possible, we provide rights information in catalog records, finding aids, and other metadata that accompanies collections or items. However, it is always the user's obligation to evaluate copyright and rights issues in light of their own use.

LECTURES ON TIBETAN RELIGIOUS CULTURE

(An Intermediate Textbook of Tibetan)

Geshe Lhundup Sopa

Department of Indian Studies

University of Wisconsin

Part I





The research reported herein was performed persuant to a contract with the US Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Office of Education, Institute of International Studies, under PL 85-864, Title VI, Section 602 as amended.

University of Wisconsin-Madison Laboratories for Recorded Instruction

The state of the s

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	ce																												
Part	I	• • • •					 							 •			 					• •		•	•	• •		•	. 1
	Lesson	One															 						 			• •			.1
	Lesson	Two					 										 						 					. 2	23
	Lesson	Thi	ree				 										 											. 1	48
	Lesson	For	ır.														 												73
	Lesson	Fir	re.				 										 											. 9	94
	Lesson	Siz	K				 																					1	12
	Lesson	Ser	ren	1 .													 											1	35
	Lesson	Eis	ght										• •				 											1	52
	Lesson	Nir	7																									-	-
	Lesson	Ter	1																									18	34
	Lesson	Ele	eve	n			• •								•				• •									19	98
Part	II	• • • •						• •	•		•			 •		•												21	15
	Lesson	Twe	elv	re.													 											2:	16
	Lesson	Thi	Lrt	ee	en												 											22	25
	Lesson	For	irt	ee	n																							21	42
	Lesson	F11	te	e	1.																							25	56
	Lesson	Siz	cte	eı	1.																							27	70
	Lesson	Sev	ren	te	e	n.																						28	34
	Lesson	Eig	ght	ee	en		 																					30	10
	Lesson	Nir	ne t	ee	en																							3:	17
	Lesson	Twe																											
	Lesson	Twe																											
	Lesson	Twe	ent	у-	-t	WC			•	• •		•		•				•		•	•	• •		•	•	• •		36	50
Gloss	ary						ૃ.		•																• •			38	30
Verb	Table.	• • • •																										44	40

PREFACE

This book was constructed to fulfill a quite special need existing within the Buddhist Studies Program at the University of Wisconsin. Its aim is the adequate linquistic preparation of students of Tibetan religion and culture who are preparing to do fieldwork for a PhD, and thereafter, among the learned lamas and geshes living in the Tibetan communities in India, Nepal, etc. As such it seeks to provide an intermediate Tibetan textbook of the type which has long been available for the teaching and study of the more familiar languages, French, German, Italian, and the like, the kind of book in which the student is exposed as much to the culture of the respective country as to a more advanced practice of the language.

At the University of Wisconsin this book is used for the second year course in spoken Tibetan. It presupposes a familiarity with the Manual of Modern Spoken Tibetan: Lhasa Dialect by Goldstein and Nornang, at the first year level. At Wisconsin, the second year course meets five times a week for three classroom and two laboratory sessions, respectively. In the laboratory, the student listens to and practises the language material by means of tapes, while in the classroom he works with a teacher on the exercises to be found at the end of each lesson.

The book is divided into two parts. In the first, the lecture material is varied, whereas the second part represents the continued exposition of a single topic. The latter in particular is representative of the kind of work a student will be doing with Tibetan scholars in India and elsewhere, where long exposition is devoted to a single given text or subject.

The language of these lectures will be rather more familiar to students of literary Tibetan than to those of modern spoken Tibetan. The language is, of course, modern Tibetan: Lhasa dialect, such as employed by scholars in discussing and lecturing on the subjects of Buddhist philosophy, religion, Tibetan history, etc. The vocabulary, however, is taken almost wholly from the literary language and the mastery of it is an act of learning independent of the learning of the modern Tibetan language in general. The working relationship between the literary language and the modern spoken is complicated by the fact that the term 'modern spoken Tibetan' covers a variety of Tibetan dialects, whereas literary Tibetan covers a uniform literary usage employed in writing without dialectal differences, by the speakers of the various Tibetan dialects. Thus, for example, if five scholars speaking five different Tibetan dialects, say, of Kham, Amdo, Gtsang, Lhasa, and Northern Tibet, were to write down beforehand a lecture on philosophy, history, etc., their language usuage would be quite uniform. However, in lecturing ex tempore, as is the custom, each will have recourse to the idiomatic usages of his own dialect, even though the core of his vocabulary will be that of the literary language. Accordingly, the

pecularity of these lectures here is that the vocabulary is mainly that of the literary language, whereas the dialectical superstructure is that of the Lhasa dialect.

Here, the principal differences between the Lhasa colloquial and literary usage are to be found in the verb forms and in words and expressions other than those belonging to the technical terminelogy of Buddhist philosophy. The literary equivalents of modern Lhasa words and expressions need not be given here in a textbook concerned with the spoken language. These may be learned by advanced students either by the reading of appropriate literary texts by native Tibetan schelars, or by memorizing specially prepared dictionaries of the literary language.

In using this book, the student should bear in mind that one of the most important consequences of the difference between the literary and spoken usage of Tibetan is that in writing the language in Tibetan orthography, there is no way to write some of the verb forms which are actually in use in the spoken language. Thus, if one were to write phonetically in Tibetan orthography, those verb forms used in the Lhasa colloquial, for instance, the resulting sentence would become unintelligible, since it would be employing particles and combinations of particles unknown to the literary language. This ought not, however, to become a problem for the student, since the verb forms in question are comparatively few, and quite regular, and the phonetic units which are spoken, as opposed to those which are written, may be learned from the tapes of the lectures themselves, e.g. Actually pronounced you ree.

In the English translations of the lectures, discritical marks are not used in rendering Sanskrit words into English orthography, although they are employed in the vocabularies and notes. Also, although the translations intend at all times to be intelligible, they do not always intend to be idiomatic English, as well. They are designed to assist the students with the Tibetan text, and in particular to show how the phrases and clauses of the often long periodic sentences are related to the main concluding verb of those sentences. This appears to be the principal problem of a student of Tibetan after he has overcome his bewilderment at the manner in which the various combinations of monosyllables form simple meaning units.

The Tibetan lectures of this text have been recorded by the University of Wisconsin Language Laboratory on tapes which are available there at a nominal cost.

The western calendar dates for historical events are often contraversial. The dates as given in the lectures do not follow a single authority, and some of these dates are quite open to question.

Acknowledgements are due to the late Mr. Richard H, Robinson, who suggested this textbook originally and who submitted the proposal to the U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, which has generously supported the project. Acknowledgement is made for the Tibetan materials used in the beginning of Lesson One and all of Lesson Three to the late Khenzur Rinpoche, Ngawang Legden, the former Khenpo of Rgyud smad, Acknowledgement is especially due to my friend and pupil, Mr. Elvin W. Jones, who kindly did the English translations of the Tibetan lectures and assisted

with the notes and vocabularies. He also handled the main part of the administrative load entailed by this project. Also, I wish to acknowledge the help of and thank Mr. Lebsang Dorje for the Tibetan orthography of the lectures and the vocabularies and notes in the lessons, and Mr. Yeshes Khasdup for the Tibetan orthography of the glossary and the verb lists: Mrs. Nancy Cotter and Jeanette Snyder for the typing of the manuscript; Jeanette Snyder and Mrs. Richard H. Rebinson for assisting with the proof-reading of the manuscript; and finally, the Department of Indian Studies of the University of Wiscensin for their various assistances with the administration of this project.

LESSON ONE

PARTI

LESSON ONE

रिवर्त्रक् रूवे असे अर्तिविष्ठा देश देश देश 50 मास्ट्रिं लेववा 人、過去して大いいか、日、日本、日本 एवंश्रास्थायाव्यायान्त्राच्या प्रयम्। उत्मः ग्रंदमः तः प्रवा प्रयम् सुरमाता मुक्त मार्स्ट लेटा पर ८.योक्षर.लूट.टेस.४वेका.झंटका.छ.ये.क्ट्रवं .पर्य क्ट्रव्द्व जूट्र पर्टे इर के प्रदेश सेनेनेनेनर्ने हेन् कर्तेन निर्देशन निर्देश कर के कर के 35:41 प्रवास अव। र में अर में क्र जिया पर क्र ने कर पर पर क्र ने अंक्ष्यं अर्के प्रमाये र याप्यं र लेवा र्मात्रेशकामा विद्राप्त राष्ट्रिया माना प्रमा र.मिमाना मेर्ट्र. जार्ट्र वार्ट्र. दे के न प्रेंच्या जार्ट्र वार्ट्र र्भक्त मुक्त वर्षे नेता देव वर्षि वर्षे स्रेशय:रेडा र्गराम्यास्त्रामान्यानाम्यान्या く、到い、多くいか、くり、から छिट.रट.ट्यूरे.टा.चा.टार.चा.टार..... देवार्य.वार्टट.टा.रुटी

र्त्राचिराल्र्राच्या स्थास्यात्र्यः द्वाचित्रास्य स्थान्त्रास्य स्थान्य स्था

ब्रिश्मार्तालव। वार्षेट्यक्षारालवा। वर्षिकारालव। वार्षेट्यक्षाराल्यक्षारालवा। वर्षिकारालवा वार्षेट्यक्षाराल्यक्षारालवाः वर्षिकारालवाः वर्षिकाराक्ष्यकारालवाः स्वान्त्राच्याः वर्षिकारात्त्रद्वाः स्वान्त्राच्यकारालवाः स्वान्त्राच्याः राष्ट्रियः ब्रेट्यक्षाः स्वान्त्राच्यक्षाः स्वान्त्राच्याः स्वान्याः स्वान्यः स्वान्त्राच्याः स्वान्त्राच्याः स्वान्यः स्वान्त्राच्याः स्वान्यः स्वान्य

श्रुभारित्रम् भाषावकाताकारात् र्युवाकार्याम् म्यास्त्रम् । स्त्रम् । स्त्रम्य । स्त्रम् । स्त्रम्

वसामर्खनमानाः अट्ट्रास्त्र देक्ष्येन् वसाक्षाः अब्दान्यमान्तरः とてか、あか、単当、日か、と、七く、か、えよらり、て、からり से.रे.४८.जूर.के.व.च्यात.क.व.क्या.क.र.त्या मारे.छ.एड्र्स्. क्रिक्ट जार्स्य ता.क्रिक्स.क्री प्रवस.संदर्भ.स्ट्री संस्थ ट्याप्टिन नास्त्राण्ट्र से में पर्ने वादेशाचा दे मेरा वार मेर हेर अत्यक्षास्त्रात्रात्रात्रात्र्याः कुरान्याः स्रोतात्राः कर्तात्र्यः स्रितात्र्यः पद्मी इर्डील्ट्नर्री लवंबधर्रक्र्र्रियं स्ट्रिस् लसंस्वाह्याल्यान्त्र त्रा त्र्याः स्ट्रायाः मान्याः स्ट्रायां ये र्रत्ये.क्ट.वरीका रवाधातिकामा वी.क्ट्र.वाधुका.विका.प्रवाम लूट्रत्युट्री झ्रेंद्रेये.क्ट्र्यासेंअत्युची हेंसी सेंग्र त.वे.क्ट्र-प्रमान्त्री स्वामाना वे.क्ट्र-वे.वाक्ट्र-व्यमानी स्राम्भूय द्वेर देर के ज्यार पारेरा नाववया नावेरा पर दे ने नाई. च्राम्य १८.में संस्थार्स्य वित्वेर वित्याव वी सम्बार्ध निर्मित र्टी हुर्माना प्रमानिमार्स्य वित्रा ता क्षेत्र दे क्षेत्र में यी प्रतिकाश. अक्ष्वं हुरं जूरकां कें क्ट्रं वं रेटा ते वीका वा हुना वं कें रेवा व यामानवादरा के तरा नरा दे के वे मुन मुक्त के के लेगा वर पानेवा चेर नर्म, मर्जा के ति. जे. जर नरी।

र्राज्या रम्बन्ध्यतप्रवराणाल्यतप्रमेताक्र्याक्ष्याच्याक्ष्या

लूट्री पत्र्य र्षादेवरमात्। देट्रलूच स्थानस्ट्रिंग्स्यमः पत्रामानेद्रान्धाव्याल्यस्त्रान्द्रान्त्रान्त्रात्रान्त्रात्रात्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्य स्थानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्थानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्थानस्यानस्यानस्यानस्त्रात् स्यानस्त्रात् स्यानस्यानस्यानस्यानस्यानस्यानस

विरायमान्द्रातार्विवाद्वार्त्यात्रामान्द्रवास्त्रवाद्वार्त्वात्या स्र देनसः परे हरे देर होर.ये.मप्र.पेनमार्मप्र.पा.पिमालन् भ्रमा.प्रत्या टमा.प्रेयम. ता लर्सेवताररस्यमार्चातावाकास्यापरिवारर् नम्बार्टिरे. ही: क्रेरेंरे निवनंत्र रेट्ट् है बे बर्ग पर पर पर देंग रेंग सर्भना नम्रमा देखना तक्षा नम्मा अवव त्रा वि नर्भे शुर्देत्तां अस्त्रामा क्री. मून्त्या प्रतिने वरता दे वे त्या दर से मू तास्त्रीयार् स्त्रीत्राच्याः प्राप्ताय्याः राम्याः राम्याः वर्ष्ये नवमान्नवमान्नवादित्रमामान्यमानामानाम्यन्त्रमानामा एंचर्त क अरत् विमाल्य पर्ता के के कर अ विमाल के ले न्। एते ग्रीन स्त्राम निर्देशन द्रा भर द्रा तिया मूर पर दे छ भ कर पर पालानु अस्व हेर ग्री तहें या भावना स्वाने ल्रा प्राप्त स्वान इटन्त्र, र्वे.केंच. धुना वी.सर. यासर. टे..... (धेनास. टा.लव.वा एड्. एटेश. र्टी बार्न्ल अ. इर. वी टट. ट्रां बीस्पर आ. लूट ब्रूट हि. रट. र् स्रिन्निक्रान्न्वर्त्वर्त्वाचान्त्रस्त्रत्याक्ष्यः とからまとめてきられて、よく!

LESSON ONE

VOCABULARY

型.对.	monastic center
\$.9.	past time, previously
वट वस	among (w/ gen.)
MAI.	part, division
न्त्रंद्राचामनाः	two different monasteries
ट्युट स्व संहरा	P.N. of a monastery
तक्षम् मार्च,	suitable
सहयाता	after (w/ gen.)
भर कुरानहिंद	to extend, to further
मुना (मुनायस	regimen
देर'या	during (w/ gen.)
क्षेत्रमः मूजः	system, custom
मार्डेब	recitation
नर्देन	to recite
क्रॅब्रायम	prayer
द्रवास.	kind
A. 42.	different

कॅ.ना	ritual
अवा . येव . (H)	performance, practice
नहेंदियः	to praise, eulogize
मर्केन नहेन	worship
र्शे.ज. प्रह्में (११ प्रवेदः)	to memorize
5.50	then
क्षरःनः	all
कुनाय.	examination
35' (35'5')	completely
मळ्ब.छेट.	philosophy; definition; characteristic
पर्यं में	elementary classes in logic; the books used in these classes
तर्ने तर्हन्ता	to begin
and a	main, principal
SIRN'S'	scholar
निवस हिता	situation; actual condition

5'35'	very	RAT	to bear, to carry
क्रेन'बेन'	to cause	न्ने क्व	Framana
य द्यारमः	count, reckoning	नि हुँद	bhiksu
के.स्ब्रिंग्यः	around, in the environs of	हूंडा.च.	Vow
बस.केब.	commonly, usually	त्यीन्य.	to be right, to be suitable
अइ.व्हर	but, nonetheless	244.A.	to cut, to shave to enter monastic
ब्रेंटन,	manner, way	24. L. S. S. A.	life; (n.) a monk or nun
カリア・かとき、	mantram, tantra the Vinaya rule	सम्बन्द	upadyaya; preceptor
लूर्मासं क्रूर्न		957	to visit (H)
इट नेलेंड	like, similar to	2.24	the garb of a monk or nun
यहें न्या	source; (fig.) a central place, hub	원·경기	tuft
16. 8.21.	just, merely	सःनहेन्यः	strand of hair except
र्व.	for the purpose of, for the sake of	797 (PART)	to shave
で、カスカ	icon-painter	नहें से दें तर्म	Bhagavan, the Blessed One
大きがあれませ、	image-maker	अर्देन हेन	stupa
र्मान्युरसाया	musician	मक्रम होन	<pre>symbol; representation</pre>
क्षिता । स्वता सर्ह्यः स्वतः सर्ह्यः	secretary	R. A.	cripple
विसाहर	bursar	मन्तर्नः	blind
प्टबंध. विस्तु	layman responsibility	रचा सेचारा ता	a mute
	reshousinities		

स्ति क्षा madman

किर् हैं कि the sake of for the sake of for the sake of salute

किर् (१०३६२) to bow down; to salute

किर् (१०३६२) to extend, to stretch out

किर् (१०३६२) defect, fault

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

(p) to become a monk

(H)

of a suitable size
to enroll at the monastic center

similarly, likewise

(H) way of performance of a ritual (rituals) to recite

to take an examination

from the base, from the bottom, from the rudiments, etc.

on account of that

one of the . . .

the reason is that

as is commonly said

number count, numerical measurement

That's how it is. It's like that.

स्वार्गात्वर वास्त्रम् वा

on one hand on the other hand from all over, from everywhere resembling, like examination limbs, hands and feet ought not; is not supposed to things which one must do until completing to count as fulfilling the requirement

NOTES

- 1. देन दें के a respectful title of address used only for lamas, i.e. chiefly recognized incarnations (क्रिया है) and preceptors (क्रिया दें) of monasteries even though not recognized incarnations. The title may also be used for one's own religious teacher.
- 2. কুন্দ (কুন্দিন) "monk's territory" or "monk's land". The name usually signifies the three big monasteries around Lhasa and Tashilungpo in Shigatse; বুন্দ্র্ন and কুন্দ্রন refer always to the former and latter respectively.
- 3. 到话气 / 四个意文 / 声话文 Each of
 the three big monasteries around Lhasa plus many of the other
 larger monasteries throughout Tibet are comprised of several
 monastic colleges (到意文). Each of these colleges
 contains a number of smaller institutional units or regional
 sections (四个 四年最初) which are based on a
 man's native province, e.g. Gtsangpa khang tshan, har gdong,
 Kong po khang tshan, etc. These regional sections in turn
 are comprised of the smallest institutional unit of the monastery, the local section (到底文) which is based on a
 man's home town, valley, etc. Historically natives of particular areas have tended to enter into particular monastic
 colleges and thus to form regional groupings which have become

quite rigid.

- 4. बेर'अवित वेर'व function variously; sometimes they indicate literally "called" such and such or "named" such and such, e.g. द्वर्ष्ट्र केंग तिर्देश केंग का a monastery which is called dga' ldan chos 'khor. At other times they function non-literally like " . . . " when one is talking about a name or word itself rather than its object, e.g. スマネタッス・ヨナ・マ・マ・ス・テタ・マ・ロ・コス・ラ・ネイ "Momentariness" signifies impermanence. However, if an entire sentence were being quoted, and much less frequently, the classical RN. ZN.would be used to indicate a direct quotation. Likewise at other times at A Pa, at are like the English "so-called" and are used principally: an indicator of a lack of familiarity or acquaintance with the object of the name on the part of the speaker or hearer, 2) by way of habit, especially of teachers who are accustomed to explaining things to persons who have not yet learned them, and 3) as an indicator of a speaker's dislike of the name or its object or to be using the name. The honorific ga, on the other hand, cannot be used as an indicator of the dislike of the name, etc.; whereas its use with another word can dignify the object to which it refers, a function which 3x 4. cannot perform.
- 5. みつる' a nominalizing additive to verbs. It denotes the

- a) agent or b) object of an action, usually the agent, e.g.:
- a) সুন্নার্থ student, সুন্নান্থ teacher, সুন্নান্থ reader, বের্নানার goer, etc., and b) ন্নানার that which is called, the so-called. It needs to be noted, however, that নামানাৰ may also at times denote the agent, e.g. নামান্য teller, , etc.
- বর্দিন Several verbs, i.e. প্রতি (pr.) and এরবং (p.) "to send", "to give", etc. and and and "to put" are frequently used with other verbs, nouns and adjectives to form an idiomatic way of saying something. For example, in English a pupil "takes an examination"; in Tibetan he "gives an examination". Whereas in English a teacher "gives an examination"; in Tibetan he "takes an examination". Some other English examples are "to take a trip", "to take a walk", "to take a rest", "to give a party", "to give a speech", "to get drunk", "to get rid of", "to get along", "to get going", "to get rich", etc. Other Tibetan examples are 35.755" "to call", हिन न न न । "to give", क न में न "to water", न सका में न में न "to think", あって「可方ち "to make bigger", 新コラコ "to close the door", 평교회의 "to put salt in"의정의 항의정의 "to advise", etc. Many of these idioms will be included in the lists of Expressions and Idioms. However, they are so numerous that the student will often have to note them for himself and to learn them as they occur in the Tibetan texts

- in the lessons.
- 7. 지지지' and 리'리디지' denote "et cetera" in general,
 but in this kind of discourse the "etc." often denotes some
 particular traditional enumeration which is to be understood.
 For example, 지도리'를리'지지지' "Buddha etc." means the
 Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha (i.e. the Three Jewels), 물리'리'전기지'
 "giving etc." means 물리'리' giving, 돌리'리'전기지'
 right
 conduct, 디즈디'리' patience, 디즈디' manly effort,
 디지리'지기리' meditation, and 저희'국리' wisdom (i.e. the
 six perfections), etc.
- - of motion to signify "into" and "out of", respectively.

 हर्नेव पर अर हिलाच to enter the monastery,

 हर्नेव पर वर्षा सर हर्नेच प to leave the monastery,

 रे वे वे ववस क्विस्ता प to go into the railroad station;

 but, of course, if the railroad station is down the hill,

 the expression would be impermissably equivocal; hence, in

 such an instance रे वि वि ववस क्विता क्विता क्विता हिला हिला हिला है।

- down into the railroad station.
- 10. ダスス "very" may be constructed with the genitive,
 e.g. a very great wish ダスス・カースディー・ある・ゴ or スティスティー・ある・ゴ or スディー・ファスス・カス・ゴ
- 11. તે among its various other uses, is often an indicator of a singling out, i.e. 1) a singling out of one from several, e.g. સંત્રાન્તિ ત્રાના ત્રાન ત્રાના ત્રાના ત્રાન ત્રાના ત્રાના ત્રાન ત્રાના ત્રાના ત્રાના ત્રાના ત્રાન ત્રાન ત્રાના
- 12. and final denote "and," "along with," "together with" and follow the word which they join to the preceding.
- 13. 문도자' a nominalizing additive to verbs. It denotes "way of" or"modus", e.g. 크로드자' way of eating, 크로 공도자' way of doing, 그런 공도자' way of going, 크로 공도자' way of speaking, 로드'라드자' way of sitting, etc.
- 14. RSRIA Vinaya The Vinaya is one of the Biggan, the Tripitaka or three baskets of the Buddhist scriptures. It

sets forth the vows relating to the practise of Prātimokṣa

(***\sigma \sigma \sigma

of 253 precepts for ব্ৰাপ্তৰ (bhiksu)

of 364 precepts for 59'35'34' (bhiksuni)

of 6 precepts for 숙학점 (śikṣamānā)

of 10 precepts for न्ने द्वेत (gramanera)

of 10 precepts for 59 & avai (framaperika)

of 5 precepts for 59,533 (upasaka)

of 5 precepts for sales (upasika)

Except for the न्ने न हेन कार्य and न्ने नहेन कार who are laymen (हिंग ने), the other vows are for those who have entered monastic life (उन्हें इन्ने).

Historically in India there were four major schools of the Vinaya, i.e. Sarvāstivāda ਬਲਕਾਰਨਾ ਅੰਨਰ ਤੇ ਹੋਰ ਜ਼ਿਲ੍ਹ ਸ਼ਲ੍ਹ ਸ਼

TRANSLATION

- R Rinpoche G Geshe-la I Inquirer
- I. Rinpoche, at the time when you formerly stayed in the monastic center how many years old were you?
- R. I was ten at the time of staying in the monastic center.
- I. You stayed in Drepung, didn't you?
- R. Yes, I stayed in Drepung.
- I. How many colleges does Drepung have?
- R. When I came to the monastic center, Drepung had four colleges. In the past, they say, Drepung had seven colleges.
- I. So then, Rinpoche, among these four colleges you were Gomang, weren't you?
- R. Yes, I was Gomang. My section was the har gdong section. My sectional division was the so-called mtsho khag.
- I. Geshe-la, where was your place of birth?
- G. My birthplace was Tsang. Tsang is to the west of Lhasa. Tsang is an extensive area. In that (area) I was born in the region called Shang.
- I. At what age did you become a monk?
- G. I was nine when I became a monk.
- I. Which monasteries did you enter?
- G. I entered two different monasteries. The place I entered first was in Tsang, a monastery of a moderate size called Dga" ldan chos 'khor. I entered there. There were about 500 monks there. Afterwards, in order to further my studies I entered the regimen of Serwa.
- I. While you were staying first at Dga' ldan chos 'khor what did you study basically?
- G. While staying at <u>Dga' ldan chos 'khor</u>, (I studied) first at a young age reading and writing the letters for a while.

Likewise, I had to memorize books to recite according to the monastery's custom, for instance, different kinds of prayer, and the performance of rituals, many different kinds of manuals of worship in praise of the Buddha, etc. Then, in the middle of the assembly of many monks one had to take an examination on everything which one had memorized. These finished completely, I began to study the great books on philosophy from the rudiments. Also, since one must first begin these with the elementary textbooks on logic, I reviewed a little the logical textbooks. The principal extensive studying of the great books I did mainly afterward at Serwa.

- I. How old were you at the time you went to Serwa?
- G. At the time of going to <u>Serwa</u> I was eighteen. At that time I had generally a great wish to study the books on philosophy. At <u>Dga' ldan chos 'khor</u> there were many scholars who returned after studying previously at <u>Serwa</u>. Once I saw the situation of these (i.e. their knowledge of Buddhist philosophy) I had also a very great wish to study at <u>Serwa</u>. On account of that I went to <u>Serwa</u>.
- I. Serwa is one of the larger monasteries in Tibet, isn't it?
- Serwa is one of the largest monasteries in Tibet. As the G. largest monasteries around Lhasa, there are three, 'Bras spungs, Serwa, and Dga' ldan. Serwa is the second because as is usually said, 'Bras spungs has a monk count of 7,700, Serwa 5,500 and Dga' ldan 3,300. So it is said, but at present it is somewhat in excess of this count. Bras spungs has four colleges, Sera three colleges, and Dga' ldan has two; it's like that. Serwa's three colleges are Byes and Smad, along with the Tantra College. The Tantra College, it studies chiefly the tantras, and the two others, they are colleges of philosophy for students principally of philosophy. On one hand, these large monasteries are monks' living quarters and completely fulfill the character of a monastery as having the Vinaya rule of the Sangha. On the other hand, they are unlike other monasteries in that they are also like a large school or like a central place to come to study from every central and boundary area of Tibet.
- I. Are all the monks who are in the monastery just students?
- G. Most of the monks who are in the monastery are students, but inasmuch as these monasteries resemble a large college, they have a need for different kinds of workers. Some being

unable to do intense studying, there are also many workers for the monastery -- for example -- there are icon-painters, image-makers, musicians, secretaries, bursars, etc.

- I. When one first becomes a monk in the monastic center, what does one have to do?
- At the time when one enters into the big monastic center, there are two types. There are two procedures for entering into the monastic center, for a layman who newly becomes a monk, and for a continuing monk from afar. When a layman newly becomes a monk, first he needs a teacher who bears responsibility (for him). One younger than seven years is not permitted to become a monk. From seven on it is permissible to become a monk, and also it is all right not to take the vow of a framana or a bhiksu for the time being. At that time, even though he does not take a vow, he changes his garb and cuts his hair, etc. and enters into monastic life. First when he visits the living quarters of the preceptor of the college, he wears a monk's clothes. He cuts the hair on the top of his head except for a few strands called a "hair tuft". This hair tuft will be cut by the preceptor of the college along with the recitation of prayer. As formerly the Blessed One cut off his hair in front of the rnam dag stupa, and entered into monastic life, the preceptor's cutting off the hair is a modern-day symbol of this.

As for the monastery's custom, generally a cripple, a blindman, a mute, a madman, and the like is not supposed to become a monk. For the purpose of examining this, at the time when one first salutes three times the preceptor one must bow down three times extending the limbs. The preceptor's inquiry about one's name, parents, etc. is an examination of whether or not one's speech and mind have defects. Likewise, for the time being one is not permitted to enter the classes of philosophy until completing the many things one has to do, reading and writing, etc., and the memorization of all the many manuals of worship to be recited according to the monastery's custom.

When a continuing monk from afar enters newly into the monastic center, there being no difficulties such as these, he may enter the classes on philosophy. The reason is that since before coming to the monastic center he has already become a monk in his own native monastery; this is taken into account.

EXERCISES

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson One.
- *1. र्वेदःनुःशःनाध्यरःविन्रशःधनेत्।
- *2. वित्यत्म्या विनामन्त्रात्मात्मार्भेनार्स्त्रियार्थो
- *3. द्वीयक्यात्मनान्यरात्वद्यात्मेना
- 4. नार्डः नेर.म.दे खेला है । मार्चेनामाना पर प्रेर परेरा
- 5. र्मे.मेर्स्यामम्।र्मेर्यानम्बर्गाम्याम्बर्गाम्याः विकास्यानेर्गामनः
- *6. न्नार वृत्र कें भारति र वेर भारे न्यें वाया के कुल न्या र भेर प्रेरा
- *7. दर्वेद्यायि त्यायास्य त्यायात्र हेदात्र द्यायायी द्या कर्ये र द्या वा के नारे
- *8. द्यांत्रवेशत्यवाशाहित्यत्ये पुरावेश्वापत्र्येशाणाः वी हेत्याये हुतः यारेदा
- १. सन्दर्भेन् क्रिन्स्तान्नेन्याने केर्न्सानेन्यान
- 10. व्यातिकेतिर्मरामान्नेवानकेननाकेन्याने
- *12. र्नेत्या विद्या विद्या कर्षे क्षा विद्या ना वा वार कुनाय विद्या विद
- *13. हिर्द्र से दूरियम दुस्त्वर से ना केर्
 - 14. तन्त्रास्त्रातारार्थेन्त्राह्मान्त्राह्मान्त्राह्मान्या
 - 15. रेब संकेति। त्रदाकी क्रिक्ति कारे नारे प्रेव पारे
- 16. व्यासिके तिरामा निर्मान के निर्माण के नि
- *17. शर्द्धन्तिन्तिन्तिः के संभार्त्यन्तिन्तिन्तिन्ति। स्वाप्तिन्तिन्ति। स्वाप्तिन्ति। स्वाप्तिनित्ति। स्वाप्तिनित्ति। स्वाप्तिनित्ति। स्वाप्तिनित्ति। स्वाप्तिनिति। स्वाप्ति। स्वाप्तिनिति। स्वाप्तिनिति। स्वाप्ति। स्वाप्तिनिति। स्वाप्ति। स्वापि। स्वाप्ति। स्वाप्ति। स्वा

- 18. क्रिंश्यास्त्राचेनसातर्दिन्दिन्देन्धेन्यनेदान्यमा
- *19. बिर्-रट-नाविट-क्.स्.मानावार्त्त्रेट-हे.न-नावट-ल-ट्रेन-विवानावट-ता
- 20. संत्र्भादनातःनासुकान्त्रेवतःव्याद्धरावेभानानाने
- *21. दर्नेवत्तर्वतायान् तायमान्वत्सम्वर्भद्तार्द्रत्यमा
- *22. न्याया हित्र क्राया क्राया क्रिया क्रिय
- *23. नुःसर्प्राचेत्त्राचित्त्राचित्त्राचात्रामानास्त्राच्यात्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्य
- *24. भुःदुर्बेर्न भुःम्र्रित्यान्यान्वनाव्यारेशम्बर्ध्यानवराणः रेर्न्स्यानारेण्येववया
- *25. बिन्द्रम्भक्षवित्रिन्तिन्तिः त्यामाश्रद्धित्यावतः व्यानिमः नर्द्वमान्यावत्याचेत्र
 - 26. नुःशः केवन्यं दे कॅर-दर्नेवन्य अवन्यन्द के सद्चित केरा निः रे अद्दर्भा
- 27. से-रूतिन्तु-कर-नसुका-चे-नेर-सून-सूर-वेद-अ-ने-सूर-ता-से-तद्व-
- 28. दर्नेद्राय ते वदः ता नुष्या तासा मा हेदः स्वामदः दे रहेसा तासा मा दर्भ दर । नारे नारे हेद हो देद।
- 29. विमायानामनः निष्णायानेतः यात्रान्यं नारे दर्गमायानेता
- 30. नुःशकेवार्अने केरायन विनाम सुद्रशने ता नेनाम नार्केद व्येदानेता
- 31. लॅट नर्ट सुन्य पार्स्य मानु सर तहीय हैन ने रेट प्या
- 32. अत्रवर्ष्यामुद्धरः केरः भरेगावरः द्वानादः तद्वानावर कारेश
- 33. ब्रिश्च विनादर से नुष्य केत दुस अविन से र न क्रिया धना प्रकृति। दर्भेका करे नारे रेट्रा
- 34. वनार्यत्ये मुन्त्र मुन्यान्त्र त्यान्य द्यान्य विकास नामान्त्र मुन्ये चे द्या

大学のからからからしていれている

- 35. त्रात्तान्तरः नित्रत्वाक्षत्वरः देवा क्षात्त्वरः क्षेत्रः वित्रत्वरः वित्रत्वत्वरः वित्रत्वतः वित्रत्वरः वित्रत्वत्वरः वित्रत्वतः वित्रत्वत्वतः वित्रत्वत्
 - B. Take all the asterisked sentences in Exercise A, and if the sentence is plain, change it to honorific. If the sentence is honorific, change it to plain.

Key to Exercise B:

- 1. र्वेट र्वो विनश्य तर्हियाचा
- 2. हिन्द्र-हिन्द्रो विष्युश्यान्यद्वरान्त्रभा न्युर्ट्य-र्था
- 3. RACHICI- BAICH
- 6. वेर समन तु समन्
- ग्नरामा देवे क खनार्यो । त्र त्व वतार्येवा तर्व । तर्व । नवरामा देवे क - खनार्यो । त्र त्व - वतार्येवा तर्व । तर्व ।
- 8. येवश-तर्ने।
- गः इर.सूंश्र-नम्दःसूंभा वःदर-न्तेरदेशलान्यरमा वरकी-नम्दस्यःशी
- 12. \$5-RGRI
- 13. danga-Rajsan
- 17. र्रेन र्सेन हेन नामन हेन नावना तर्ने नन्ता
- 19. नावदाया बेदाया
- 21. यी.त. ट्रेन. परिवत्ता प्रमामा स्वितासमा क्रेर सम्बद्ध-नावदःसम्बद्धा
- 22. विर दुस-नावर दुसा वस वेन-नावर वेन
- 23. शुःसः-नादवःसा तेवःदर्नेसः-वित्रः-दर्मसा
- 24. अ.स्. ५८.स्. अ.स. ५८.स.स. नवना-नवनानवना

25. वेतास-वेतास-नावटः। वर्ष्ट्रनास-वेतास-नावटः।

इंदर्श के विद्रास में देश भारति हैं देश में हैं देश हैं है के हैं कि है

LESSON TWO

विसर्टित् सैंच नक्रित्त्वीत्र्वास्त्र मारिक्तिकी पर्स्त्रेन हुर नेवर सरमानार प्रदेश लेव वस यरवे.म.यर्भम.ग्रेंभ.ग्रे.ये.क्ट.क्.मूच.क्ट्र.वेट.संटम.तथ.क्र. ४ट.त्. र्रा लवंबर्ट्स.र.विश्वक्ट्.प्त.वि.ध.म्बक्वव.व.हिर.पर्ट. एह्रवाचान्युःद्वार्भरायान्ता एह्रवाचान्द्रियान्तान्त्र हिर्मानाई.स्.ची नगरर्ट्यहें ने क्रिये हें ने हिर्मे हें ने हें ने हें ने हें हर्निक्सलाहे र्रान्य कर्मा रेन्स सम्बेस रहिना प्रियान अर्हित के सूराया श्रीय ना वेर रेश रा न वेव र रेडिट केरी र्.लर.चर्रिंश.वी.क्. ४ तुर.कर.चर्ने आ.लूर.टा.रूटा चर्रिंस.वी.बुर. तार्कर्भित्रिक्राम्याम् निर्देश्यान्त्राम्यान्त्रिक्रिक्रा र्र्र्र्र्नेन्त्रित्रात्रं वीकाराष्ट्रे नावर्त्तनाना हे. पः इसका प्रें प्री स्वावत C1.244.064.54.2.30.4034.0.444.0.2847.01.4.06.06.06. 14.44 MQX-44/2-5-82.96-4162-02-9152-83-4-2-82. व.र.प.प्रहेब.वप्र, वर्मानी है. मु. प्रे.प्रे.प्र. क. मर.त्. प्रद्रम्भ. ल्ट्यान्ट्र नार्क्ट्यान्स्त्रान्त्रम्यान्त्रम् हिन्द्रिन् हिन्द्रा क्ररं अप्र विट के अर्रेर्य भारति मेर् हैं ते हैं राष्ट्रेश दिन्स्य। दिन्स्य। श्रास्ट्रिश हिं तुः ता अर्द्ध्य अरे तहेंबन्ना वर्तिया भवतामर हरमा द्वारा के मार्चर न या. हेर. श्रे. न प्रे. स्रान्त्रित्रात्रातात्वात्रसाम्यान् । मूनान्त्रितान् सराद्या अत्या

तर्ष्र्युक्र्याक्षार्श्चे श्रुट्र होट होट हो ने नी। दर एवं जा तप्र तक्षेत्र व्यक्ष्म अट त् त् त् हे हो काष्ट्र ता क्ष्म तक्ष्म निक्ष का तक्ष्म हो हे त्या का त्या तक्ष्म त्या क्ष्म क्ष्म

क्रिया प्राप्ता में त्र क्रिया क्रिय

र्वस्रिक्षेत्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्रात्राच्या र्वास.क्रवास.रेवा, एतवास.त.हे. ८८.। सरस.ब्रिस.डिसा प्रवास. हाव. एवं रे. प्रास्त्राम. ग्रीम. नक्ष्ममा. नप्र. न विटः क्षमम् रेटा विता. तर्री मित्रीयश्रास्य सम्माना तरि द्वा सार्ष्या तर्रा देवे. रत्त्रम्या देनवेवत्त्त्त्राच्याम्यान्यः पह्यस्यत्ते स्वासः इस्रातानाई त्रेन्त्रेव हेन्द्रेन होने । एरिजान्त्रः सेन्याताः स् वर्श्वा अर्रेट्रा प्रत्विसंग्या एर्ग नरेन्त्रातः इस्र र्दा देवस्य ग्रीन्न्र राजा त्रे ता नरे नर्वन्त्र्मा ही: १८। विरान्तर रि. मून र्त्व प्रवाहन स्ट्रिंग अहर्तात्र्यर् स्वाप्तरात्र्वाराद्वायद्वाराम्यः त्रिक्तिल्या क. इससा ता श्रीत वाहेर हेर हो रेरा। नकूसाद्धें दर। देवातरारे सून रेत्र रेत्रेच नाग्रेच के सामहर नप्रसद्द स्व। देष्ठ. नद्वमा १८ नद्वमा १८ नद्वमा १ न न्यानी नद्वार्या पर्वा या निया ता निया ता त्या निया पर त्रेष्ठाः सहवात्ताः सार्वात्ता द्वाः अते तहेवत्ताः नात्रहेवताः रेरामें निवेशारे पर्टिं में प्रिंग है निवेश हिता प्रेंप हैं निवेश हैं । म्येगर्टा अर्ट्रम्मित्रम् म्येगर्थाम्येगर्थाः स्थित्रम् तहेव गुन्द भर न नेता र्वश्चात्राप्तारम्बारम्बान् वे वे वे न्यान्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् व व विषयाः स्र्र म् खेता सर्दिस्य किर्या स्रित्र के खेत हैं विकास मा के वे त्रेरी म्बरास्त्रेर्देष् प्रवासा वेदा पा नहीं न वहा हिंदा देवे प्रवेदा

म् न्द्रा। वेरत्रेशक्षरः स्वादाः के क्षरः मे र्यायाः चित्रं प्रत्याः देशका ग्रीकाः स्वाः

ट्यानिश्वाक्तिः में अन्यानि विद्राने या राष्ट्रया के रहेव के प्राप्तिया में रका वार्ष्याने अन्यावित्रं दे वे श्रुवाना वे राभना वेशा ता वहेंशा वशानी... नायका. के. कर प्रमूप की मेरी मेरिया हेर जा पर जा प्रमूप के मेरिया पा दे.ध्या.क्ष्यारा. नकारा दे.ध्या.नेयारा न्यारा दे.ध्या.ग्रीर.वाराचारासा. पर्वत्यी. लूर. त.रूरी क्षेत्रभारा रेट. क्ष्युकार्य मार्च दे । । । त्रद्रीर में ने त्या ने त्या में दे के दे ने विश्व में में दे के विश्व में हैं के विश्व में ते रकारह्व्येषेप्रवरातान्धर्योत्री नगरन्तर्रात्रस्याया मार्गिस्स्स्रिन्नेन्त्रेन्त्र्यान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्र म्रिवरामान्यन्तर्भाग्यन। तहेवान्याक्तमा के करमीत्तर मुन्नात् क्रिन्द्र वर्षेट् वर्षेट्र वर्षेत्र क्रिन्ना लूटी एड्रव. ये. ४८, यहमा है। वर सून हैं ने ते तियान नि अहर ने हैं ने दे ने न न न न न न न न क्ट्नर्विर क्रिंद्र त्र त्रियायवास्त्र क्रिंद्र क्रिंद्र स्त्र त्र 35.5)-3511

र्स्वरतःरटःवर्गःस्टि। क्रीर्टी दः लवः श्ट्रः दे स्ट्रां स्वाक्षः क्षार्वाः । वरः क्षार्यः त्र प्रः त्विताः क्षेर् वात्वेद्यः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः विवादाः व्यावेद्यः विवादाः विवादा

नक्ष्यां स्टार्श्या स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रिया स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रास्ट्रिया स्ट्रिया स्ट्रिया

द्रभावित्त्र्यात्त्रम् त्रित्त्रम् नावत्त्वाः स्ट्रान्त्रम्। नोत्त्रा द्रभावेद्रमः त्रित्रमः त्रेशः द्रमः त्र्यः व्यवेद्रमः त्रे वित्रमः त्रे क्षातः । स्रात्रमः देरे देरे देरे क्ष्यसः स्वातः क्ष्यः द्रवे व्यवेद्रमः त्रे वित्रमः त्रे वि

ची-सूर्तान्त्री वी-सूर्तान्त्री रिमायक्ष्यां सूर्यां श्री स्मायक्ष्यां की स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्याः स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यां स्मायक्ष्यं स्मायक्षयं स्मायक्ष्यं स्मायक्ष्यं स्मायक्ष्यं स्मायक्ष्यं स्मायक्ष्यं स्मायक्ष्यं स्मायक्

LESSON TWO

VOCABULARY

ध्युतः (१ <u>ब्र</u> िज.)	to carry; arrive; reach	र्देश तर्से.	forerunner; introduction
नाद्यः	monastic center same meaning as grwa sa	सर्. सर्च. द्वेट स	arrangement, order, sequence
4A.97.	mostly, for the most part	58.A.	name; terminology subdivision; classification
37.05K	in general class	355	separately
न्यात. (H)	the Buddhist scriptures, i.e. the speech (of	में व	to understand, comprehend easy; happy
नह्रुव नहेंग	the Buddha) commentary, śastra	वर्षेर् (वर्गरः)	to arrange; formulate
नहें ५'रॅब	subject, topic	वर सहर	treasury key
इर (वड्डस)	to abridge; summarize; epitomize	र्रुम (प द्यम्म)	to compose, write
र्कर्मः	epistomology, pramāna, logic	\$21.5 <u>2</u>	P.N. of a place session
यन स्वेत	Prajñāpāramitā Mādhyamika	केंग	date (i.e. of the month)
	Abhidharmako sa	म ३ म र र	together

À'37'	only, just
र्स्च - दर्धन	master, master teacher, <u>ācārya</u>
स्निम् ना	Dignāga
महर	to make; compose (H)
कर्न संगुन्न नह	Pramanasamuccaya
रद त्रेया	autocommentary
371475	in particular
श्रीन स	disciple, pupil
ब्रुश न् न्या	Dharmakirti
र्म्यातः	(w/ gen.)
इत संरक्ष अव	common of
94.8.	monastic text- book
द्र्येटशाया	actual thought
र्यामःयः	doubt, uncer- tainty
उन्ने धन्तः	related to, relevant to
लय.कृत.	mutually, reciprocally, back and forth
至"曰"	root; root-text
म्ब.	basis, base, foundation
हे नहुंब	venerable

the Natha Maitreya, the Savior Maitreya Abhisamayalamkara pandit subcommentary Nāgārjuna Aryadeva Buddhapalita Bhāvaviveka Candrakirti Madhyamakāvatara Prātimoksa-sūtra Caturagama Gunaprabha Agamamula to study Vasubandhu to arrive, reach examination to give importance Pagan to name; (n.) name, title position

学士が、こ、	highest of the four grades of Geshe	SHAIR
क्र्यम्प्रस्थाः	second highest grade of Geshe	8
र्यास-रक्षात	next to lowest grade of Geshe	S. S.
ब्राद्य नास्त्रयः	lowest grade of Geshe	3
SA'SBR'	disputation	6
52.026. 22.025.	to take one's	718
7875	again	100
8a.	in detail	R

स्यास्य सर्वेतः	fine, subtle
र्द्धनास सर्वेट	P.N. of a festival
स्बन	accordant, conformable to, consistent with
39.94	together (H)
रे.कॉल	in turn, by turn
क्ष. <u>क</u> ्षेत्राचाता. इ.क्ष्य.	tirthika, extremist an adherent of a non-Buddhist doctrine
कें रख्य	power of magical creation
प्रह्माया (व्यक्ष्माया)	to establish, institute

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

सबर'स'त्रिय'ची नर	until reaching the end
अर्केन न	for example
वर्देन र्ने व स्वर रे	central subjects
नमायान होतं न	successively; in sequence; gradually
कुर'रन्नेर'के	rudimentary, intermediate, and superior; small, medium, and large; etc.
नाबर् तनानाः	salient points
विन्वस्थान्द्रं.	clear (refers only to discourse)
र्नुव र्स्स (स्था)	winter session
लें सूर	yearly, annually

हरा तर्ने at the early part (of the month) The Seven Treatises refutation (of the position of others), establishment (of one's own position), and response (to criticism of one's own position) とうい to resolve uncertainty in addition to this brief, for a short while Serwa, 'Bras spungs and Dga' ldan debate, disputation competition in progress, development The Twenty Works Pertaining to Maitreya The Six Logical Works (of the Madhyamika) number of years to take an examination very, extremely of great importance

depending upon the quality of to obtain the name or title of

a Geshe who is to be a . such a class)

until one's turn comes a varying length of time review, practise again

द्वार:न्य.

holiday, celebration

a numerical order (i.e. 1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.)

religious holiday, holy season

in turn

in the lifetime of (highly Hon.)

to compete in the power of magical creation

NOTES

- 1. お名では、兄童のできょう。 It is to be noted that in time expressions with 名文 like お名文は「食」の文 "until completing", おいスペースでは、"until one's turn arrives", etc., Tibetan idiomatic usage employs the negative which English usage does not require.

book to be read"; however, and an advert to be read" would be more frequent and less ambiguous for expression of necessity or obligation; c) like an advert and advert and less ambiguous for expression of necessity or obligation; c) like an advert and ad

and translated an enormous body of canonical or near canonical Buddhist literature from India. All this was brought together by the 14th century in the compilations of the sutras and tantras, i.e., works recognised as the authorative utterance of the Buddha, and their Indian commentaries, called respectively the ARREST and the ARREST CONTROLLED These texts are representative of the entire development of Buddhist thought in India from its beginning to the time of its disappearance. These five central subjects or quintessentials are main categories of classification through which Tibetan scholarship has sought to deal systematically with this vast body of Indian Buddhist philosophical tradition.

Noticeably absent is perhaps only the Cittamatra or Yogācāra. In the context of the monastic system of education such as is being discussed, the Yogācāra works are in fact intensely studied even though there are no separate classes in Yogācāra. Its study is done in connection with the classes in Logic, which is in part a Yogācāra system, and especially with the classes in the Prajñāpāramitā on which many important Indian commentaries were composed from the Yogācāra point of view. Consequently, the five central subjects may be said to cover the entire sūtra and sūtra commentarial tradition of Indian Buddhism.

- 4. 55% is here translated by "logic". However, Indian logic in the hands of Buddhist logicians underwent what was essentially a reform. As a consequence, what is actually studied under the name of 55%, although it includes the apparatus of traditional logic, i.e. syllogism, fallacies, eristic, etc., is fundamentally an epistemology or investigation of right cognition itself. Hence, the word 55% in a Buddhist context might also be translated by "epistemology" since this is what is actually under consideration, and what needs to be understood is 'an (epistemological) logic' or 'logic (and epistemology)'.
- 5. a construction commonly forming the future tense of the verb, is often used to denote the generality of

the action or the performance of the action in general. In spite of the frequency of the verb plus \mathfrak{D} (etc.) \mathfrak{T} to denote generality of the action, the verb plus \mathfrak{D} (etc.) \mathfrak{T} is both more frequent as well as more proper for expression of generality of the action.

Also, in combination with the verb, the five phonological variants of the genitive particle, 3.5.5.2.2, are all pronounced the same way in Lhasa colloquial, i.e. qi, even though the spelling continues to follow the phonological rules.

- 6. ঠেন্ট্রি "the logical texts", i.e., the

 Pramānasamuccaya etc. of Dignāga, the Seven Treatises of

 Dharmakīrti (see note 9), along with their Indian and Tibetan commentaries.
- 7. "the way of reason", i.e., the method of reasoning logically.
- 8. ইন্দেশ The Tibetan month is the lunar month of thirty days. ইন্দেশ or বুলুল is the early part of the month or roughly the first third, the middle of the month being called বুলুক্ন , and the final part is referred to as বুলুল or বুলুল্ .
- 9. ক্রিমের বস্তুর বর্জন প্রবৃত্তর or কর্ন প্রবৃত্তর or কর্ম প্রবৃত্তর or কর্ন প্রবৃত্তর or কর্ম প্রবৃত্তর or ক্রম প্রবৃত্তর or কর্ম প্রবৃত্তর or কর্ম প্রবৃত্তর or কর্ম প্রবৃ

the Pramanaviniscaya (र्डिन स्मायन द्या प and the Nyaya-bindu (39.42.3974.4. of which treats all the subjects of logic with the greatest, medium, and smallest amount of detail respectively, along with the four works which deal each with specific logical questions, i.e., the Hetu-bindu (नहन केन्स वन्स (4) which deals with the actual number of aspects which necessarily constitute a valid inferential mark or reason; the Sambandha-parakisa (२३० व व न) which deals with the theory of relation as understood by Buddhist logicians; the Samtanantara-siddhi (55 निवर्ग्यनः) which deals with the repudiation of solipism; and the Vada-nyāya (환숙·덕유·국회자·덕· which deals with the proper method of demonstration in the face of controversy.

- 10. The Ana are textbook-like explanations of the fine and often the more difficult points of Buddhist philosophy, and they represent the somewhat individual point of departure of their authors who were illustrious scholars of the individual monastic colleges (Ana). Each monastic college studies its own particular Ana.
- 11. ব্ৰাণ্টার বাস্থা the three, refutation,
 establishment, and response, is the method of discussion of
 Buddhist philosophy commonly employed in the monastic textbooks

(). Refutation is refutation of the theories of other scholars; establishment of one's own theory; and response is answering objections raised by others to one's own theory.

12. まれいらうでははいるだっているできません。

twenty works related to Maitreya are the five books of the natha Maitreya (まれっきっきっ), Asanga's five treatises on levels and his two compendia, plus the eight prakarana (せんてきょうう) of Vasubandhu. These are enumerated below.

The Five Books of Maitreya (อุมพ.ธัณ.ชี.ชี.)

Mahāyāna sūtrālamkāra kārikā केन्याकेन्येताम् रेप्तिक्र

Asanga's Five Treatises on Levels (저 경영 '

Yogacaryā-bhīmi-nirnaya-saṃgraha इतारहेंत्रधूर्पत्थाताता.

Yogacarya-bhumau vastu-samgraha इतार्वेर र्यु र पति सा ता सा

Yogacarya-bhumau paryaya-samgraha द्वात हेर हुं त्यते सामा

Yogacarya-bhumau vivarana-samgraha द्वार्वर मुंद्र परि तर

Asanga's Two Compendia (ह्या इस न्वेस

Mahayana-samgraha aq. a. aq. a. aq. a.

The Eight Prakarana (ちってってってっている) of Vasubandhu

Sütrālamkāra-bhāsya अर्रे.हे.हेन्डे.नभर्.न.

Madhyanta-vibhanga tika न्यान्य वर्षा वर्ष

Dharma-dharmatā-vibhanga-vṛtti कॅलाइड कॅला हेर् क्या पर

Trimsikā-kārikā garārakā garārakāning and garakandha-prakarana garārakarana garārak

13. देवस परे र्क्स्वास द्वा or देवारा क्रेंबस द्वा

- "the six logical works of the Mādhyamika" signifies six of the works of one of the main systematizers of the Māhāyana, the Indian master Nāgārjuna, in which he deals principally with the demonstration of the Buddhist theory of emptiness (sunyatā, Tib.

categories of existence-nonexistence etc. as viewed by various systems of Indian realism, both Buddhist and non-Buddhist. or Prajnamula (Banana) and in the Vaidalya-sutra (विव सं ह्रा तथन) he subjects to criticism the conclusions and reasons of the various realist systems in order to establish his own position of no-realism. faced with the realist objection that if every realist tenet is altogether repudiated then cognition itself will become completely indeterminate and consequently will be unable to establish anything either realist or non-realist, he deals with these objections in the Vigraha-vyavartani (वेन) and the Sunyata-saptati (व्रंट केट नहन हैं न in which he seeks to save the determinacy of cognition in the face of his denial of every realist proposition. Finally, in the Yukti-sastika (3900 5950 the Ratnavall (देन के व देन न show that the practise of the Buddhist paths needs to be based upon understanding of the theory of sunyata. - one of the two chief religious festi-

 used to translate the Sanskrit "tīrthika". In ancient India the tīrthikas were holy-men, lit. "paths" or "fords" offering to others the way of salvation or deliverance. The early Buddhists applied the term "tīrthikas" - possibly a pejorative meaning literally "a tiny path" - to the adherents of all the non-Buddhist creeds, and its sense appears to have been "the followers of the 'holy' authorities". The Tibetans chose to render this term in the Tibetan language by the word "" , "the upholders of the outer edges", and its sense is "an extremist", Buddhism choosing to consider itself a middle way, in ethics between the extremities of asceticism and hedonism, and in metaphysics between the extremities of nihilism and hypostatization or reification.

TRANSLATION

- I. From first beginning to study at the monastic center, what is the way of studying until reaching the end?
- The way of studying in the colleges of the three monastic G. centers is for the most part the same. However, if one takes Serwa-byes college for an example -- in general there are 16 classes. In these classes the principal studies are logic, the first (of the five) which epitomize the subjects of the scriptures and their commentaries into five quintessentials; then the Prajnaparamita, the Madhyamika, the Vinaya, and the Abhidharma: these one studies successively. Also, there are three bsdud grwa (classes), the elementary, intermediate, and highest. The so-called bsdud grwa are arrangements of the way of reasoning which is introductory to looking at the logical texts. The major salient points of the terminology and classification, etc. are arranged separately by Tibetan scholars, clearly and easily understandable to new students; they have composed many books which are like a key which is the means of entry into the treasury of the logical texts. One studies these chiefly. The actual studying of the long texts on logic one must do afterwards gradually. For example, in (Serwa) byes college there is no separate class in logic (i.e. above and beyond the three classes utilizing the bsdud grwa). Nonetheless, every year at the Ljangs winter session, from the early part of the eleventh month to the fifteenth day of the twelfth month, there is a place for study where many students of the three monastic centers, in assembly together, study only the logical texts. The books which are the basis for study are the Compendium of Right Cognition written by the Indian master Dignaga and its autocommentary, etc., and in particular one does chiefly The Seven Treatises, commentaries on logic composed by his disciple, the master Dharmakirti, and various commentaries written by other Indian scholars; in addition to this, Tibetan scholars have composed many commentaries relevant to numerous resolutions of uncertainty as to the refutation, establishment, and response on the actual thought of the scriptures and their commentaries -- the so-called yig cha which are exclusive to each of the monastic centers; one studies these. Although the Ljangs winter session is short, it is a good place to study the long texts on logic. The reason is that during that (session) through competition in debating back and forth by the students of Serwa, 'Bras spungs and Dga' ldan one resolves uncertainties which were previously unresolved, and there comes newly a very strong

progress in one's studies.

Then during the five classes on the Prajnaparamita, the root text (or) ground taken for a basis is the Abhisamayalamkara composed by the venerable Savior Maitreya. One takes its commentaries, principally the twenty commentaries written by the pandits of India and different commentaries and subcommentaries written by Tibetan scholars. In addition to these one studies The Twenty Works Pertaining to Maitreya and the Tibetan yig chas on these.

Then, in the classes on the Madhyamika, one studies chiefly the Six Logical Works of the Madhyamika composed by Nagarjuna and the works written by Aryadeva, Buddhapalita, Bhavaviveka, etc., in particular Candrakirti's Madhyamakavatara and its autocommentary, and similarly the yig chas written by Tibetan scholars.

At the time of (learning) the Vinaya, one takes principally the Vinaya scriptures, the <u>Pratimoksasutra</u> and the <u>Caturagama</u>, etc., and generally the commentaries pertinent to their thought, in particular the <u>Agamamula</u> of Gunaprabha and its autocommentary, and one studies the Tibetan <u>yig chas</u> (on these).

At the time of the Abhidharma, one studies chiefly the commentaries written by Indian scholars in general, and in particular the root-text composed by the master Vasabandu, the Abhidharmakosa, along with autocommentary.

For the three <u>bsdud grwa</u> classes there are three years, and for the five Prajnaparamita classes there are five years. For the two Madhyamika classes one spends two years in each class, for there are four years. In the same way the number of years in the two classes on the Vinaya and in the two Abhidharma classes is the same as the Madhyamika classes.

Then, when one has reached the so-called <u>bka' ram</u> class, one has to take a long examination. This examination is extremely important, for depending upon the quality of this examination, one will afterwards obtain the rank of the four higher or lower Geshe titles -- according to the grade (of the examination).

- I. How does one get those four Geshe ranks?
- G. As for these four Geshe ranks, depending upon the quality of one's studies one obtains a higher or lower status. The best students obtain <a href="https://linear.com/linear.

who get <u>lha ram pa</u> and <u>tshogs ram pa</u> go to the highest class called <u>lha ram</u>. The kinds of Geshes who are to be <u>rigs ram pa</u> and <u>gling gseb</u> remain in the <u>bka' ram</u> class.

Until the turn comes for the Geshe disputation of each individual in both the lha ram pa and bka' ram pa (class) each has to remain in his own class; consequently, according to the size of the class there is a varying number of years (of waiting for the disputation). As for one's studies in both of these classes, one does principally the Vinaya and the Abhidharma, and finely and in detail debates back and forth, relevant to reviewing all the others. Both the rigs ram pa and the gling gseb arrange their disputations in their own individual monasteries, and they are given their Geshe status from their own monasteries. fore, these kinds have the so-called lower Geshe level. In the second Tibetan month at the tshogs mchod festival, the congregations of Serwa, 'Bras spungs and Dga' ldan stay in Lhasa for about 10 days, and during that, the tshogs ram pa arrange their Geshe disputations. The Tibetan government assigns a numerical order (of merit) of the Geshes consistent with the quality of their disputation. Similarly, during 21 days of the first Tibetan month, the smon lam festival is a holy season for all the monastic congregations of Serwa, 'Bras spungs and Dga' ldan in assembly together in Lhasa. During this the lha ram pa of Serwa, 'Bras spungs and Dga' ldan hold their Geshe disputations every day in turn. Depending upon the quality of the examination, a numerical order of (merit in) the disputation, first, second, etc. is assigned by the Tibetan government.

The smon lam is a festival (celebrating) the (Buddha's) competition in the power of magical creation with the six teachers of the extremists, etc. for 15 days formerly during the Blessed One's lifetime. The Lord, the great Tsong kha pa established it anew in conformity with the custom of the great Indian monasteries of Nalanda, etc.

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Two.
- *1. न्द्रसानसुक्षकी:नुःर्ह्द्रस्त्रीनःस्ट्रिन्स्ट्रसानद्वीःर्यद्वार्यद्वार्यद्वार
 - 2. सर्वेशनुर्द्धतासारहिन्नुनार्द्धतार्भेन्यारेना
- *3. तह्वन्त्रान्द्रितःवदःक्वन्द्रन्त्र्भान्द्रा
- *4. तहेंब नु ने केंत्र वद ता सेंच केंद्र नार्के नेंद्र नारे केंद्र के केंद्र नारे केंद्र के केंद्र नारे केंद्र
- *5. नहस्र में वर्ष ने निर्धित क्षेत्र ने क्षेत्र के क्षेत्र क्षेत्र के क्षेत्र के क्षेत्र के क्षेत्र के क्षेत्र
- *6. ब्रिट्स न्तु मु र्स्स लु न न न न न न न न न न
- *7. नक्षानारत्वेन्त्रानाः हर्षाः भर्ताः रेत्
 - 8. हिट्याद्वीयां क्या की में दायां कर् स्था निवानी में नामें ता । र्श्विम केट केट की जेंद्र स्था केट्र स्था निवानी में नामें ता ।
- *9. सर्व हैंनाशक्त त्यारत्रीयाताक्तित्यात्व क्रिक्सातात्रा क्रिक् प्रेत्।
- *10. नाम्यासंस्थितः स्थान्या व्याप्ता क्षेत्रः स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य भागः । देन्या संस्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य
- *11. हिरम्द्रिय क्ष्रिक्र क्ष्रिक्ष क्ष्रिक्ष क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्ष्रिक्ष क्षेत्र क्ष्रिक्ष क्ष्रिक्ष क्ष्रिक्ष
- *12. धरखेदारहेदानु खेरे रेट ता सेंच ईट ईट अनारे जंदार देन
- *13. द्वुःस्त्रेनाशःक्रनाशःद्वनाः वेरः भः नक्रिनः र्यदः तः रेप्त्रः । वर्ष्टस्यः तः रेदा
- *14. रवे.अ.एटेबाताच्यालार्ला अ.सेव.केस.हैयस.इक्षा.वाक्टाता
 - त्रक्ष्यर. ट्रि. केट ल्यूट ता स्ट्री भी. केच्यूट हैं देश एवं द्या स्ट्री अप स्ट्रीय प्रते स्ट्रीय प्रते स्ट्रीय प्रते स्ट्रीय स्ट्रीय
 - 16. द्वासि सहविद्याता सं नार्के द से द देन समारा देन

- *17. でいいかが、まりまするが、ままられば、まってり
- *18. दवायित्यस्य हदः र्वदाशः सुनाशः सुन् छन्द्रवीशः भः भेन्दास्त्रप्या
- 19. कर्दर क्षेत्रवसाय नातुन्वारं वार्क वर्ष केर केरे
- *20. दर्नामन्यादेशायमाने दें दे रना सुद्रा मृदार्श रेदा
- *21. द्वित्रभारहेवेनुप्ता नगरात्रभारहेवेनुम्बल्यान्तार्भेक्षात्रना
- 22. अँव ताम द्वाकेत केर अर आरे नार तर्नाहेना रेरा
- *23. र्क्स्याः अर्देर द्वारे केत्र देना पर केंना या केंपिर देश
 - 24. न्युस-तु-तर्देन्त्रान्त्रुस्याः त्रिनार्द्धेन र्यून प्रेन प्रेन प्रेन
 - 25. मूर्पासर्बाद्धवर्त्रस्यान्द्वासम्बद्धाः भवत्वा
- *26. से रवस न्वार वासुस की है न्याय केंस्र है स्वाय केवा ता न्याय करे
- *27. द्यान्यवेयाक्षः रवादाक्षरः अदःरवाद्यः त्यवेदाःस्यायः स्ट्राः आतः
- *28. वर्गतः म्हार्ट्वन्तुः बेरचन्द्रः कृषायः र्युन् कवः सं विनः र्युन् दर्वेशः देन्या देन्यायः के त्यं या देन कृष्ययः र्युन् कवः सं विनः र्युन् दर्वेशः
- *29. रेनास-रस-प्र-प् श्री-प्रस्थायायायाक्याक्याक्या-रेनावुनः...
- *30. क्षेत्रमरास्त्रमासामर्वेदान्त्रम्यादेन्त्रम्यादेन्त्रम्यात्तेत्रम्यात्तेत्रम्यात्तेत्रम्यात्तेत्रम्यात्ते

B. Take all the asterisked sentences in Exercise A, and if the sentence is plain, change it to honorific. If the sentence is honorific, change it to plain.

Key to Exercise B:

- 1. ब्रेन्स्य नाब्दस्य
- 3. र्ट्र्न्स-वाव्यास-दर्गमा
- 4. 350 735-7
- 5. 当不一日日 当不到一日日
- 6. 月四一十五四
- 7. 45-47-45-46
- 3. 日本とう、一日本と、日日八日、一四日の、大田、日田八日)
- 10. नारेने -नारे भेन्या
- 11. र्डिया-नावदाया
- 12. 多等一可可不要
- 14. सर्माया अक्ट्रामाया स्वामाया हर- न्या
- 17. र्रायां र्रायां र्रायां र्रायां र्रायां र्रायां न्यां न्यां न्यां न्यां न्यां न्यां न्यां न्यां
- क्रीयास्त्रिक्त अक्ष्यास्त्रित्यवतः। विवासःस्त्रिक्त - अक्ष्यत्यस्यास्त्री सः पहरः - अत्यावतः।
- 20. <u>14.524.-141.192.524.</u>
- 21. नद्द-द्वास:-वाव्यास-द्वास
- 23. क्यारा की -क्यारा नावर ने
- 26. नावनाना-नावनानावनान
- 27. नुर्-नवर्

- 28. नाम केन्यं श्रुमास नाम कर्ने।
- 29. र्ने.चर्य न्यु.चर्या

LESSON THREE

१८० रिवर्ट के सक्व पहिला मान्य मान्य मान्य निर्मा सक्य मान्य विवासा-सावट मूट्रसम्मट्रसम्मूट्रस शर्यम्मभर् त्रित्रत्ये वर्षायम् वर्षा त्रित्यवेशयरे स्था न्यनानेवास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रा क्रि. येर. रेट. त्. विकास विकास कार् नावट देवूरा . यी. लूर रेना क्रियरेवर. हर स्थार्र प्रसम्भित्ना दिसाव। क्रिया द्वारा विश्वास्त्र वर्ष्याक्षात्रात्रवाद्वाद्वा वर्षेत्रवादालवावार्याद्वादेरक्षात्र क्रांड्रेनावेर्वितित्रांक्रांक्रांक्रांक्रांक्रांक्रांक्रां रेप्टेन्ट्र ता नाई में इन्दिर के दारे के सा तुना मा ता तुना मा ते मा ते ना ने ना ने ना ब्रेट्सरमासूर। अमर एडमरेटा चट्रमक्र्य उद्यम ब्रेट्समा हेर असंभाभा स्वासन्त्रित्यित्रक्त्ये के क्रान्ट्रहें सन्त्रियाया के स्वास मैन्द्र। मामवद्रिं में मर्वे वस्ति में मर्वे वस्ति हैं मर् र्. देश. ए. नमर झंगमा. ग्रे. गर्टर इममा. त. इम. नम म. प्रम. प्रम. प्रम. प्रम. त्क्विः र्यावदकी में राजेश द्वेरवा विव रश्चिति विदक्ष मर प्रदेशका डेर.क्रा.च्या.ड्र-तर्नेर.पर्नेर.पर्नेर.वि. हि.मा.क्रे.ची.प्रेय.चेर.पर्नेर. रेडि.स्.च.चरटा अववत्त्रात्रह्महव्येत्वरःस्मान्वव क्रांभावद्वरादे एह्नामा हीर ही न मेर नुमा ही हूना नमा न इसा नमेर ना नर ही मूर्ग मा एड्डी. विरः श्रीमाता नाई में खना न तेया नवर ने मेरा। र्नित्रेवानास्त्रिमान्ता चर्नास्त्रमार्चनास्त्रास्त्रमार्भन्यास्

क्रवारी रिक्र प्रतिस्वित्र विद्या है दे विद्या है क्रिया है स्वर है स्तर है स्वर विद्या है पिरान्त्रिं स्त्रान्त्र ने ने ने ने विव क्रिया के ना क्रिया क्रिया निर्माण्याः । क्रिया वित्र व्यासान्ता कर्ने निर्माण्या स्थाप व्यासाना स्थाप रहिर्द्र्वानी द्वाद्रमः हर्नेत्रा हर्नेता हर्नेत्रमः प्रमान्य वार्षः व्यापन मार्ल्यामाना समारान्य्य मार्थायारेन्या हेना हरा हमा हमा यानामवर्त्राचामर १८१म हा विराग्न त्या विषया विषये. इट्. ष. त. कुव . तूस अहूट . त. सट . य न स. कुव . तू. दे वर्ष टे . ते . य वट . त. न्। एम् क्रिम्भ न्या देक्षा क्रिम मित्र पार्म स्पर्य मुन्ति सम्देर पार् धर्म्सक्तावराने प्राप्ता नेवलवर्नार सव क्रिया स्वयासा य्यानेना तेना प्रायम्य विकाल महिन्यते यह देश पर्म याप म अक्ट्रियक्ट.धंट.वर्त दर.अ.उ.क्स.क्र्य.स्.स्र.र्त १.क्रुं.वर. क्रान्च वान्त्रामा प्रदेशमा द्राया द्राया दर्श वर्ष वा दर परेनामा हे न हिन हे न हे न हे र्टा क्रि.श्रेर.श्रेक्ट. त्रेग.४८वमा.अविवाह.प्रेम.रवासर.क्रेम.अहर. त्युःस्मित्तिष्यः द्वाः क्षित्ये हित्ति । स्वार्यस्य स्वर्धः द्वाः वसः अववः द्यः ।

क्री. में में से सार्थ का स्ट्रिंट क्रिस क्रिस क्री हैं से स्ट्रिंट के से क्रिस क्र

नार्म्यान्द्रम्नाक्ष्याक्षातद्वालेना र्ल्याच्यान्या लयमान्त्र यद्वसाम्यस्य देवे द्वर्गान्य स्था वर्षा वर्षा नवर्नान्ता रे.लव.इट्रिंडिंग्डा.ड्रं.ड्रे.ड्रंडिंडिंगे.राष्ट्रं.वर्रंडिंगे.वर्ष. पत्रः हे न पार्डमार् न स्ट्रिं हिं विश्व प्राय्व मान्य में ने न मा ह्रेर् झर महेश्रात्सरवर के अपला निस्मानवर में रेरा देर्द झनह रवर्षावश्रास्तराची र्। देलराष्ट्रिर्ट्यारिवताचनमारवराद्यः अ विश्वासिन्द्रिया निर्मा निर्मा निर्मा विश्वास्त्र । ८०५. हे. अधिमारा व क्या तह देव्या रहे देवर गुरा देवा प्रवेश र मिमारिक्रासीवकातविकाःक्षाः क्षाः छ। पटाना वार्यान सर्वेदकाः लूरान स्रीहिष् नक्रिस्थान्न नम् निर्देश्यात्र मिर्टिस्थर मिर्टिस्थर मिर्टिस रटा चर्रमानामानामानामानामान्यमान्यान्यमान्यानामान नवर नरेश। हैर्रेरिंग्नेन्स् हैर्न्स्रात् अट्ट्र्ल्य्रेराचे नार्ष्ट्र्ने नहर्ने दिसासी ही नेता है हिट शास्त्रीया न्त्रि हेट दिस्या कराया की नेताया पर अट्रांप्रेट्रहा देखाने श्रिक्षास्त्रीताताने देता हेट्रदि हिर्देश भ्रिक्षात्र। मूर्वावित्रेत्रित्वस्ति इस्मिन् । मान्यान्यान्यः क्र्याक्ष्मान्यस्य निर्देशन्तर्भारा निर्देश्व वसार्दे व्यापक निर्देश वर्ष्ट्रमाताक्रेन्ते। लेंकाइस्मासेरचेंर्यु र्यु र्यासेन्स्ना राष्ट्रित्यी पर इटा दास्त्रान्धरामवरास्या समानी र्योदाराने । इन्सन्ति। त्रे त्रे त्र द्रवाक्त न्यावस वाया प्रतिस नविद्या नविद्या ने द्रिया में

क्रम्यास्त्रित्रात्री देवन्त्रात्राचन्त्राचर्चन्त्राचर्चन्त्राचन्त्राचन्त्राचन्त्रा ८८। र्पवेश्वन्तेरान्सापाक्सान्ग्रेसान्यास्य न्यास्य न्यास्य । द्रास्केश ह रिट्या केर सर म्यामा ता कुर तर र विद्यालमा वि अर्थ अर्थ सिर्धित स्ट्रा ते केर्य श्रीर्युमा अत्वर्यात्र, क्रान्य, प्रान्यात्राच्यात्राच्यां स्त्रीत्रा रिश्चन्त्री अर्द्रक्ष स्ट्रिक्न विश्व प्रति । त्रिक्न क्षेत्र या.रट.अर्बेनतर्रम् याचेनास्यमान्त्रस्य मान्यस्य मान्यस्य क्रिप्रदिर्द्व: ब्रेस्प्ना स्रिक्त क्रिक्त क्रिक्त क्रिक्त स्रिक्त व्याप्ति वास स्रिक्त व्याप्ति वास क्रिक्त मुनास्तान्ता देलत्स्यास्त्रम्नास्यास्यास्त्रम्न्त्रास्त्रास्त्रा करकरनं कर अर. लूरता रेप. रूर प्रिंटर रेप्वर रेप्वर अक्सर याल्यास्त्रामा अत्राचा मुका या मुका द्वा मुना मुना मुना हुन हुन । र्र। श्वत्वर्रत्रे क्रान्त्रिया में न्या में या स्रामान्द्रास्यान्त्रियान्त्रियान्त्रियान्त्रियान्त्रियाः 至当からから、より、とり、とう、とう、で、くり、くらくり मिर्टाक्र सार्वात्ये अपि स्वास्त्रिया अन्त्रा हिर्हरतापातहिर्न्यातहरत्र्राह्मास्यातहरत्। मार्था ल्यान्ता मारवासातवाक्ष्यावसारवात्राक्षाः ग्रीकाराच प्रमा क्रुं में रेनर विर्मा ता हेना लवा वा नर त्या वश ह्या मार् या पर मिर्मा में विकास के ने । रे. अव प्र. केट केट अका किट बेर विकास तथा वास नाववान्त्रान्त्रावावरात्राः विवानीराक्ष्राताः भवावावनिर्देशः त्रिम्द्रम्स्, लग्यार् दर्मा नहिर.न्द्रात् क्र्मानदे नामर प्रहेगम.

नारी आही. रे की का प्राप्त ही :कू. चा कू राजा की माना की दिन का अट जू ही र प्रहूं व 2.रेज्रा र.जमाम् कररेटा वरामामा नामर देवामा में पूरा रहे. नर्नेट.वे.चेन्नराटेटा हुराटेटा हैजासूची सूचा.केवा.जुनाटार्नु.... विवासीय सेर्यामा सेवामा सेर् निर्वेमा तामा सर। वस सेव में पर स्थे विभन्न प्रविक्ति नार्त्त्र ने विक्तान ने विक्ति प्रवित्ति ने विक्ति । प्राष्ट्रभावरामा स्वाम्यम् अतिर्वेशायान्। कूर्यकान्त्रान्त्रं रेशिराधित्रश्चित्रशक्त्रास्त्राम् म्यास्त्रं स्टिन् श्री ह्रा निर्मा श्रमा श्रमा मूर्यम् मेर्ने में माना हिर हिर हिर मान्या प्रेरा न हिर में मानी हिन है ने में इ.३८.हर्या. छ.स्यारार्टा वि.प्रेश.प्रेयाशायाः राज्यामान्ति हेया मुभावत्त्वीद्रातात्वीद्रातात्वाकृत्त्रकृतात्राभास्त्रात्वास्त्रात्वास्त्रात्वास्त्रात्वासः त्रोवात्वासः त्रोवा नवरने जेर पर देश रिवारानेमाक्त्रं कर्तायाः कर्तावरा त्यारामाः त्यारा स्ट्रास्याः वारहरमा प्यायवा रवायानाक्त्राक्ताक्ताक्ताक्तातात्वातात्वाद्यास्यान्य बोर्डला ग्रीकेबाका होते द्रवा हि दर्बाला किंवा महत्र देए लवा हे या पारहूता. विट्ना देवात्राक्ता राष्ट्रमाने म्यूरा देवायेन देवायेन म्यूर हैंगान र किर श्रीतेन्द्रस्य भाग्नित्य प्रतायन्त्रात्त्व मान्त्रस्य न्त्रात्त्रम्य श्चर्यातपुरिहर्गमानुराक्षात्र्याःस्त्राःस्त्राःस्त्रान्त्राःस्त्रान्त्रान्त्रा ८८। श्रिन्यक्रमावेर्यात्रित्तर् अक्ष्माक्ष्माक्षाः स्रेर्त्वः ... श्रीस्थान्यपद्गतः तर्ने नान्या रम्नम् वर्षम् डेर् अविव विवादर। द्वेवायम दर्पतिया नेनाम केवार् प्रहर्वा वेश

कर.रे.केर.तपु.मुर.रे.ब.वम.होर.४वर.वेर.वर.स्बास.मु.रवरक.लर.लूर.त. प्रमान्त्र देनमारवार क्यानमार हिंदर द्वा श्रमा मिर मेश हा अवा प्र पारिवर्यावसास्त्रसाराकारापियाची स्रेचा हिना स्रेचा स्रेचा प्रित्रा देते. इस.श.लटबा उट. अ.अर्. श्वामा वार्डे अ. क्री. के बीमा सूर क. म् र्वे ब अमारे देत. प्रमायात्रमान्द्रभाद्रसाद्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमान्द्रमा श्चान्त्रिः अर्ट्रिंश्वे विविष्ठः हिन्दि राष्ट्रे स्वास्त्रियाते विवास विवास क्रीताक्रिवित्र हुर्या पार्शिकारविष्ट्र हुना प्रवित्क्रीवित हुना नेता मिना र्ये.अस्ट्रेज्यसंभविद्याङ्कांक्टराष्ट्र अधिवाद् वि.ची.चरी कि विवाद् त्य. र्राक्षेत्रात्रिमा र्राज्या आधवत् रेडिर्ड्रिये वर्षा लवं वर्षा न्राय्या हरेर। अधवः र्न्द्रम् अर्थाः अवाव विद्यस्य स्मावत्याः देता विद्यवाना विवायः म्राक्षाः क्रान्तिः देनाराः ह्रमान्तिः नितान्ति। र्वार स्वास्य विमाने। देन्द्रने सिनास्य हिन होन परि पर्वारे इंस्ट्रायतप्रसिक्धान्द्रम्स्यान्त्रम् नियान्त्र प्रत्यामा केवा हवा कर् हिया मा जूरमा ह्या मा ग्रीयाप सेवा मिरानमें ने तर में बेरा हिने ने प्राम्ति हैं ने हैं कि से में में में प्रअन्त्। क्रीमा अक्री दिनाक्षेत्र स्वमा वे व दिन से परिमार्गित नर्भान्ने तित्रास्त्रामा तान्त्रीत् स्ताना नत् स्ताना स्ताना स्ताना स्ताना स्ताना स्ताना स्ताना स्ताना स्ताना यित्यक्षेत्रं म्यावराष्ट्रम्थान विकासन्ति केर्

LESSON THREE

VOCABULARY

tantra Lower Tantra College (P.N.) developing stage one who practices the developing stage to go around, to make the rounds of RSN'S Guhyasamāja Sambhara Yamantaka mandala mantrum; tantra practice of meditation (n.); to practice meditation (v.) perfecting stages instruction; explanation text transmission powder; dust color

to construct, to build Panchen Lama P.N. of a person The Developing Stage of Yamantaka to take in hand(H) to practice (H) (P) root-tantra P.N. of a place commentary title of a book to say, to call (H)

P.N. of a person

title of a book

「日本」を用る (H) founder tika (Sanskt. word) (a type of) commentary lead tika-reciter to select; to nominate chiefly the Upper Tantra College Varsika, the summer retreat of the Sangha 5 to accept, to (H) admit y to protect; to keep, to observe in order to, for the purpose of purpose upon to free from, to release from to accord with, to be in conformity with P.N. of a place

later line; outline chant, hymn tantra-sound (a deep resonate vocal production) gso sbyong (see note) demarcation, partition; one who is set off, i.e. a recluse more than a person in one of the two tantra colleges to finish to get (H) representative (H) leader responsibility doctrine, teaching exemplary biography, a story of a model life

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

अर्ज निम्हानाईर (H) to do one's Geshe

केरान्वजना वन

on the first day

सर्न-वस्त

briefly, in brief

क्रि.नप्र. स्थार्थना

tantra session

कुर्ने सं सं सं सं ती नाम.

TH' the system of the tantras

があらるられ

from (i.e. of a person) (H)

the developing and perfecting stages

य द विश्व में में प्रति हैं ने स्वास में स

to receive a text-transmission

द्रवास्त्र

colored stone dust

वर्षान्त्र

to check the recitation (H)

न्यर्पर्तिस्वास्य Guhyasamāja, Sambhāra, and Yamāntaka न्यर्प्ति त्र्याप वर्षे सर्वे प्राचित्र

あっろう

India and Tibet

नाम हिंद

listening (i.e. study) and practice (H)

3135

not only (see note)

यर यन्य कर दे

very famous

नतर्भः सर नार्

to transmit and explain a text (H)

सु अहर

to continue, to take up where one leaves off

\$ 5 (H)

to complete

specially

(H) to take an examination therefore, consequently at the end of one year, with the passage time acceptance of the precepts of the summer retreat (H) custom; system living creatures injury to life and limb practice (n.) from memory the helper or attendant of a recluse to see or meet from (i.e. of a person) (pl.) secret instruction from any of the monastic centers as belonging to, as part of otherwise, except that . . from an early age before finishing precepts which are kept, observances veins, breath, and semen illusory body inner yoga

とれ、みないこと、ひつだっ

कुत्-प्रतेश-प्रतेश-स्रीता-प्राका-स्रोता-प्राका-स्रोता-प्रतेश-प्रतेश-स्रोता-प्रका-प्रतेश-प्रतेश-

श्चार विकास

別ある。またり。 (H)

१९ हैं ज्या

निर्देश्यान्यवरः।म

to rise gradually; to rise through the cursus honorum

monitor of the tantra college

regimen; rules

scrutiny (n.)

as punishment for an infraction

society, membership

lead lama

to give an examination

responsibility for the activities or functions

to represent

generally; usually; continuously

exposition and practice

everyday

assemblage

to give religious instruction to teach religion

NOTES

- 1. ASTARNATED Lit. "to give (one's Geshe) title"

 ASTARNATED (pl) and AAATARNATED (H.) "title"

 signify only the title or degree of Geshe, and "to give" AFSTARNATED (Postering food and sometimes other presents to at least all the monks of one's college on the day of taking one's Geshe examination.
- 2. The members of the tentra colleges are constantly on the move together from place to place on a fixed annual circuit. They stay at each place from a week to several months. At each place, certain specific tantric teachings are taught and practiced. The "sessions" refer to these locales and the teaching associated with each.
- 3. বাম্বাস্থা এই আইনা নেইবামাইর The Guhyasamāja, Sambhāra, and Yamāntaka are the three principal tantras studied and practiced by the Dge lugs pa sect.
- yoga practices belonging to the highest level of the tantra,
 the anuttara tantra (3'4'45'46'55'), the former being a
 method of meditation which effects a maturation of the mind for
 the practise of the latter. A mastery of the perfecting stages
 is the immediate aim of the tantra method, as the higher attain-

ments of the tantric path are dependent on this mastery.

- 5. As the transmission of a text <u>via</u> recitation, reading, etc.

 Here, the emphasis is upon the lineage or unbroken continuity

 of the <u>tradition</u> whereby some important enunciation of a teaching

 whether a sutra or a tantra or a sastra is handed down through
 an uninterrupted line of recipients.
- 6. AZNIANT pronounced tsipsas
- 7. "up" because the examination is taken from a person of superior knowledge and position.
- 8. & a particle which suffixed to verbs denotes completion of the action of the verb. The verb + & = the English perfect tenses, e.g.:

Present perfect

(lst person) I have already eaten.
্বেশ্বৰ্থান্তন্ত্ৰ

(3rd person) He has already eaten.
স্থান্ত্র্বা

Past perfect

(1st person) When he came I had eaten.
স্থিত ব্ৰংব্ৰাস্থাই বিংঘাৰ

(3rd person) When I came he had eaten.

Future perfect

(lst person) When he comes I shall have eaten. 「不でいる」とは、また。

(3rd person) When I come he will have eaten.
েত্ৰ বুল ক্ষেত্ৰথ কৰি তি বিব

General perfect

- (1st person) When he comes I generally have eaten.
 স্প্রের্থনের ব্রাথন্
- (3rd person) When I come he generally has eaten. らいがらられてはいのまれるようではいる。

The 2nd person uses the verb forms of the 3rd for the formation of the above tenses.

- 9. 557 To Under the Vinaya rules the varsika or summer retreat of the Sangha is observed by monks for a period of roughly three months each summer. At the beginning of this period the monk takes a vow to observe several precepts above and beyond those entailed by his monk's vow, the principal being not to move more than 500 arm-spans from his living quarters.
- 11. The honorific "to say" is often used to denote authoritative utterance. Here in the context of the Vinaya, it signifies, "It is stated by the Buddha.".
- 12. Za A word usually meaning "just", "only", "merely", etc. is often used in the spoken language to signify approxi-

mation, viz., "just about" or "around", e.g.: ಹੁੱਛੱડ નોલેલ.

વાર્ટમાં "just about two o'clock", ਸ਼ਵਾਦਾ ਸਵੇਸ਼ ਜਵਾਦੇ ਜੋ ਜੋ "

"just around twenty persons in the room".

The word is usually pronounced tsa. Again, the word દેસ is sometimes used also to signify minimally, viz., "at least some", e.g., સુવાલું કુલામાં માર્ચાલું ક્રિયા માર્ચાલું કુલામાં કુલામાં માર્ચાલું કુલામાં કુ

- 13. Example a locale about one day's journey to the west of Lhasa. It is famous for its hot springs where people go to bathe in the summer. It has a particular religious association for the Dge lugs pas as Tsong kha pa is reputed to have bathed there shortly before his death.
- 14. The Sanskrit posadha. Each fortnight, the members of the Sangha observe posadha, a practice entailing assembling together, the recitation of the Pratimoksa precepts, confession of infractions of the precepts, etc.
- 15. 3'75'75' Generally in Tibetan monasteries

 the 55'75' is a man who leads the assembled monks

 in recitation, chanting, etc. on the other hand 3'75'75'

 refers only to the occupant and the office which is the second

 highest in each, the Upper and the Lower Tantra College.
- 16. 193 and 95 8 are the two colleges of Dga' ldan

monastery. Each has its own preceptor (APR) who just as in the colleges of Serwa and 'Bras spungs is elected by the monks of the college from among their own members. The Dharma-master of Shar rtse and Byang rtse are two positions quite independent of the preceptorship, and they have nothing to do with the business of running their respective colleges. Each is slated to occupy automatically later the Throne of Dga' ldan, the seat of Tsong kha pa, the founder and master of the Dge lugs pa teaching.

17. ਛੱਕ ਕੁੱਸਕ - "religious" in contradistinction to ਕ੍ਰਿਕ੍ਰਿਕ "secular".

TRANSLATION

- G. Rinpoche, once you had done your Geshe, did you enter the tantra (college) immediately, or how did you do?
- R. Having done my Geshe in the first month, I entered into the Lower Tantra College on the first day of the second month.
- G. On first entering the tantra college, what did you have to do?
- R. To tell briefly the things to be done in thetantra collegeon entering the tantra college there are so many places to visit called the tantra sessions, for a period of six years if one is a bekyed rim pa and for one year if a Gesne. These are areas around Lhasa and the three monastic centers (where) one must make the rounds of the tantra sessions. About the studying and practicing mainly of the tantra system during this timeone practices meditation on the tantras pertaining to the mandala rites of the three, Guhyasamaja, Sambhara, and Yamantaka, etc.and gets much text-transmission and explanation on the developing and perfecting stages from the preceptor, and one nears, ponders, and practices the tantric works continuously. For instance, on the ninth month during the Yamantaka session at Lhasa, the Yamantaka mandala of colored stone powder is con-Its ritual is performed. The preceptor does a recitation-check etc. on the Developing Stages of Yamantaka composed by the Panchen Lama. Blo bzang chos rgyan, and one practices mainly on Yamantaka. Likewise, at the respective time of the Gunyasamaja and Sambhara sessions also, the mandala of colored stone dust is constructed, and one practices mainly on the teaching of these two and their rites. Likewise in their individual sessions, one listens to and practices the texts of the root tantras of Guhyasamaja, Sambhara, and Yamantaka, and their commentaries composed by Indian and Tibetan scholars along with the subcommentaries. Not only that, in particular, in the second Tibetan month, at the transmitting and explaining the text of the renowned Gsang 'dus rtsa rgyud kyi 'grel pa bshi sgrags, composed by the lord, the great Tsong kna pa; at each other individual session one picks it up where one left off and so completes its transmission and exposition. Similarly, at the time of the Dga' ldan session, one does the transmission and exposition of the Bskyed rim dngos grub rgya mtsho composed by Mknas grub dga legs dpal bzang. And not only that, at each individual session the preceptor does a recitation check on the Bde mchong and 'Jigs byed Bskyed rim written by the Panchen, Blo bzang chos rgyan, and the Gsang 'dus rtsa rgyud

kyi tika etc. by the founder of the Lower Tantra College, the lord, Shes rab seng ge.

Within a single year two Geshes called the lead tika reciters are especially selected as reciters of the <u>Guhyasamaja tika</u>. These two chiefly among the individual tika-reciters have to offer up an examination on whatever recitation-check the preceptor does. Consequently, at the end of one year, each (man) has obtained the completion of a major system, the commentaries on the root-tantras of Sambhara, Guhyasamaja, and Yamantaka, their subcommentaries, and their text-transmissions.

- G. Isn't the time period for doing the summer retreat somewhat different for the Upper and Lower Tantra Colleges and for the three monastic centers?
- R. Yes, it is. The three monastic centers accept the precepts for the earlier summer retreat. Therefore, the earlier summer retreat starts from the sixteenth day of the sixth Tibetan month. and the summer retreat is observed until the thirtieth day of the eighth Tibetan month. Both the Upper and Lower Tantra Colleges take the later summer retreat precepts. This begins on the sixteenth day of the seventh Tibetan month, and the summer retreat is observed until the thirtieth day of the eighth month. Also, the members of the Sangha ought generally to accept the precepts of the earlier summer retreat. By virtue of the need to be allowed to accept a later summer retreat if one is unable to accept the earlier summer retreat, the Buddha taught two different ways of accepting the summer retreat precepts. In order that this custom (i.e. of two ways of keeping the summer retreat) might not deteriorate, in Tibet also both the Upper and Lower Tantra Colleges and the three monastic centers observe two different acceptances of the summer retreat precepts.

Generally speaking, there are many purposes for the summer retreat. Since outside in the summertime there are quite many kinds of living creatures on the green grass and so on, the chief (purpose) is to avoid injury to the life and limb of these. It is said in the Vinaya of the Blessed One, "If one does not know the time of release from the summer retreat, when the leaves of the autumn trees become yellow, it is permissible to be released." In conformity with the thought of this, since the leaves of the trees become yellow, etc., on about the eighth Tibetan month, it is permissible to be released from the summer retreat at that time.

In later times, the place where the members of the Sangha

of the Lower Tantra College accept the summer retreat precepts is at Chu mig lung. During that, the preceptor does a text-transmission and exposition of Sambhara, and likewise the practitioners of the developing stage, having done practice on the outline of the mandala, the colored powder, chanting, (the production of) the tantra-sound, etc., must take an examination with the lead lama. On the fifteenth day of the eighth Tibetan month, at the time of posadha, the preceptor must recite from memory the entire Pratimoksa sutra.

Likewise, during the summer retreat, there is specially selected each year a teacher, called the lead-teacher, of the meditative system of Guhyasamaja to thirty-two persons, Geshes and the like, in keeping with the number of the thirty-two deities of the Guhyasamaja mandala. He instructs them, and they do meditation on Guhyasamaja. Moreover, each man doing meditation has separately a tiny meditation hut. During that time no one sees or meets them other than one or two persons, the lead-teacher and the recluse's helper. On the twenty-third day of the eighth month, once they are released from meditation, the lead-teacher and the Geshes who newly entered that year must get from the preceptor secret instruction on the steps of meditation.

- G. Aren't all the persons in the tantra college just Geshes?
- No. Generally speaking, in the tantra college there are two different kinds called developing stage practitioners and perfection stage practitioners. If one enters the tantra college and has finished his Geshe at any of the monastic centers, from the first he enters as a part of the perfecting stage practitioners. Otherwise, if he enters the tantra college at an early age, or enters before finishing his studies at another of the monastic centers, he has to enter as a part of the developing stage practitioners. A developing stage practitioner needs to memorize many tantric texts, the mandala rites, etc. of Sambhara, Guhyasamaja, and Yamantaka. They study a multitude of things, the observances of the Pratimoksa, Bodhisattva, and Tantra vows, the outlines (of the mandalas), the colored stone powder, and the performance of rituals and they must take an examination (on these). only that, as their chief practice they need to do study, examination, and meditation on the developing stage which is preparatory to the perfecting stage.

As for the perfecting stage practitioners, they do not need, like the developing stage practitioners, to take an examination on their memorization of the mandala rites etc.,

and upon finishing the doings of the developing stage, they practice the threefold study, examination, and meditation on the inner yoga of the perfecting stage of the illusory body, the clear light, etc. and meditation on the veins, breath, and semen.

- G. How do the Geshes in the tantra college rise through the cursus honorum?
- R. The higher Geshes after entering the tantra college need to take an examination with the government in both sutra and tantra. Depending on the quality of this examination, he gets the lead tika-recitership. In a single year, there are two Geshes who do the lead tika-recitership. Both these Geshes on the following year arrange a disputation on tantra in the tantra college, and they obtain a mentorship of the tantra college. The former lead reciter has to arrange his disputation during the Yamantaka session in the ninth month and latter reciter during the Sambhara session during the eleventh month.

The so-called mentor is chiefly a watcher after the rules of the tantra college. If a major sort of contravention of the rules occurs, as a punishment for the transgression he has the power of expulsion etc. from membership in the tantra college. Then, some do the lead teachership. During the summer retreat at Chu mig lung, these instruct in the way of meditating the Guhyasamaja, and afterwards again they have to do a long examination with the government in both sutra and tantra, and according to its quality they obtain the position of lead lama.

Beneath the tantra college preceptor the lead lama is the bearer of the greatest responsibility for the activities (of the tantra college) (i.e.) giving the examinations, watching after the rules, performing the rituals of the tantra college, etc. One does the preceptorship of the tantra college after doing the lead lama (position) for three years. The preceptorship is for three. Then, if he is the preceptor from the Upper Tantra College, he obtains the dharma-mastership of Shar rtse, and if he is the preceptor from the Lower Tantra College the dharma-mastership from Byang rtse. Successively by turn they obtain the Dga' ldan throne for seven years.

(The occupier of) the Dga' ldan throne represents the lord Tsong kha pa, the master of the Dge lugs pa teaching and is one of the highest religious leaders. He carries on in a likeness to the model life of the lord, the great Tsong kha pa, as exemplified by his bearing generally the responsibility of the doctrine through his exposition and practice of the complete (train-

ing of the) sutras and tantras in general, and in particular through his teaching religion to the assemblages of the 'Bras spungs, Serwa and Dga' ldan daily at the smon lam and Tshog mchod festivals.

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Three.
- *1. रवानिवसक्तान्त्रिम् स्थानित्वस्य पहत्त्रसाम् स्थानित्वर्षाः विष्या राष्ट्रे
- *2. कुर्न्यक्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः वित्रः क्ष्यः क्षयः क्ष्यः क्षयः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्षयः क
- *3. रेशर्यंक्रेमक्ष्यन्त्रम्भानावत्युव्यस्त्राच्यायेते वदायाकुरायाः विवासामवदायाये
- 4. कुर्त्याक्ष्माक्ष्माक्ष्माक्ष्माक्ष्मान्यरात्रांनाक्ष्रित्यक्ष्मरम्बोकात्रात्रेत्र
- *5. BANEANTENBYBYANTANTWYCHAY
- *6. नार्के चेंद्र नार्देर प्रोत्यार किंद्र की केंद्र ति कार्या न विश्वान वर्षे
- 7. तह्नामा केत्र के के मार्थेना स्निया दिवार केर नाट तह नहेना विद्यार के पूर्व देश
- 8. दितेनेदासाम्मान्यस्थानानेनान्दानाः व्यद्भानानेना
- १ हें नामरतिमानरने सक्ना क्रियां मेन्याना नेते मेराया
- 10. विना क्या वना वन्य देन वना नेते वहा ता रेना
- 11. ब्रुट्य र्वेश स्वाय के नाबुद ना ने ना ने ता नाई र ने न से व र्वेट वेट
- 12. अविद्रंश में निक्ना दि त्ये भारत्य विद्यास वितरि वितर
- 13. तम्रायान्यविष्यम् विनान्यान्यते तम्रायान्य वर्षा

- १४. स्वरः द्वार्क्तः विवास्त्र स्वरः स्वरः
- *15. कुर्झर्त्रार्खराख्नायहन्स्यावस्यातुःस्वा
- भर त.अ.र्ट.त्म। *10 है.पेस.रट.स्ट.च्याअस्ट्.तपु.चस्ट.पट्टस.इ.केट.वि.र्टेगे.चक्ट्रें
 - 17. ट्रेन्नास्ट्रेंन्ड्रान्न्ज्रान्त्रा
- 18. लेंनाईनानान्यताता रेम्स्प्रेरप्तंनना स्रिप्तंना रामेरा
- 19. ट्रिन्नेन्द्रन्त्वन्तर्भार्नन्तर्भान्त्रन्ता
- ग्रानस्थान्त्रन्त्रन्त्राह्मान्याः क्षेत्रक्तः नामस्याः नामतः अन्तः हिताः स्त्रिः ने नात्वः
- *21. नक्रम्नवस्थानस्थान्यस्थान्त्रम्भान्तिः द्रस्य कर्त्रम्
- 22. 587.51.51.64.43.64.64.24.34.34.34.3
- 23. रहर्ना वसायमायमाय द्यापनी दुसार्केट नार्थमा पर दर्वासाय रे
- 24. नामासेर्प्स्रिस्डिस्डिस्सिम्सिस्सिस्सिस्सिस्सिस्सिस्सि
- *25. रभूर नावस र ना दुस में ता ह्वा ने पेंद पर रेंदा
- 26. क्रान्नर्थेप्यम्यावसावसायवसायावरासारेयापरारेरा
- 27. कुं मन् तुरक्रिं भार्र न्युर्देश्यादार्स्य नारे नवर दर्ग्यारेद
- 28. हें बहारिन्द्रें व वेन ने ने ने ने निम्मित ने ने
- *29. नामदारद्वभार्म्भनाम् मान्यान्य मान्यान्य । स्थान्य । स्थाय । स्थान्य । स्थान्य । स्थान्य । स्थान्य । स्थान्य । स्थाय्य । स्थाय । स्थाय्य । स्थाय्य । स्थाय्य । स्थाय्य । स्थाय्य । स्थाय्य । स्
- 30. कुंभेनातुर दुः अर्हभन्य रादे सँमा अर्ह्समा नादुमार्चे ता की र्ये र

- *31. अर्द्धश्रादादे र्ह्मा हो नाववदना दर । सु हुन हुन हो र् प्रदेश देन स्था
- 32. गुन्यकित्सन्मान्यवान्यान्त्रमानेन्यमा
- 33. नष्टिन्देशन् वेदः भाने नान्तर् तर्नात्रेनात् वेदः की भून नार्देश
- *34. ह्यास्त्रस्य स्वायाः वास्त्राः स्वायाः वास्त्राः वर्षेत्रः देशायते
- 35. ह्यास्त्रस्य नित्रस्य त्यात्र वस्य त्यात्र नित्र नित्र ने ने ने ने
- ३६. रम्मिन्यः क्रियाः देन्त्रः मा म्रियाः स्ट्रास्
- 37. कुर्पति द्वान स्था क्रिका कर्ण कर आन्तर् व ना ने ने र
- 38. 2.3193.45.46.6.4.2.40.42.4.4.4.4.4.
- *39. श्रामान्युः सहित् के त्यारात्मावानार्के ने ना ने जवाया वी
- 40. अवर्यं तं ना संद नावद दर्ने स पर्देश
- 41. अविद्यार्थितात्रेरी
- 42. तनातः द्वासार्वातः स्तर्भाताः सत्रात्रः स्तर्भाताः सत्रात्रः सत्रात्रः सत्रात्रः सत्रात्रः सत्रात्रः सत्रात्रः सत्रात
- B. Take all the asterisked sentences in Exercise A, and if the sentence is plain, change it to honorific. If the sentence is honorific, change it to plain.

Key to Exercise B:

- 1. श्रेट्यह्मारा-सर्वत्वत्वात्वा वहरः नव्या
- इ. नर्भर-नर्भर-वाबरा
- 3. अर्बव्यानम्यायन्यवन्यानः केन्यम्यानम्य

- 5. विरस्न-नावरःस्-सर्द्सी
- 6. श्रम्भानव्या-श्रम्भानव्य
- 15. श्रमाप्तर्वशास्त्रामन तर्वशास्त्रामन।
- 16. みぞう つまみり
- 21. 124.43.m.-64.2.2.464.m.-64.264.2142.ml
- 25. र्न् ता कॅना ने -र्ने ता नान्द कॅना ने
- 29. 夏河四月3-夏河四月
- 31. "" 37- 35 R. RSS
- 34. भनानी रेट्-भनानानानानरनी रेट्री
- 39. पर्यातनाव-विन्यासनावी

LESSON FOUR

करी विदर्भरसाक्षितः इनमारिक्षित्रात्रेकारिकार्यकारा इनकी मूर्ता नुरी म्नित्रात्मात्मान्त्रमान्यम् नार्यन्ति नित्रमान्यम् नार्यम् मान्यमान्यम् । मिनमारम् रूर्ना मान्या अर्द्धनान्त्रुअन्तु र्लेव ह्वास्त्र्यान्य देश द्र्यार्षे प्रक्षन्य स्वर् राम् 山城と、日田で山水」ととといいからかい、山山りにまりまり、山水山へい、 प्रकृत्वत्र्याः प्रदायाः मेत्रा प्रत्तेवा अक्तान्त्रः त्यां स्टार्मः । स्ट्रान्यः स्टार्मः । स्ट्रान्यः स्ट्रा म्द्रावे। द्र्वासक्तानासुस्रातात्रविर्यद्रत्त्रास्त्रीः मृतायस्यः स्वमानी प्रदेवामातापमा स्वत्य प्रविद्याता स्टार्ट स्वा में हीत. क्वात्वसम्नित्रातकत्वर्त्तर्भातकत्वर्त्त्रं सुन्यात्रम् र्'रा'लर. के मेररा पर्येषट जर के नरा वरा असर र पर असर र पर हर्वत्तर स्वरंत्रास्याच्यां प्राप्तास्यां स्वरंत्रास्यां विद्यां विद्यास्यां स्वरं देल्ल्स्स्यान्त्रः मिनमारम् अस्यान्। नर्षि स्वान्त्रेयान्यः सम्बद्धः मुवाअव ए. रेचा इस वका शरकार्वर। अविव न इविस्तर्भे माना मा स्रीमत्रुं. ल्व. थवं. ल्यां सं इत्यान्य प्र. स्राचिमा न्या विवास. स्रीतमा हीवाक्षेत्र सार्यनात्तर में वादा में ब्रह्म ता भर द्वा पाद्या देश ना सुरक्ष धारे त्रिक्सार्क्ष्यं क्रियं र्यं अर्था स्थार्ष्यं अर्था क्रियं अर्था क्रियं द्त्याःक्षान्ववाद्वः स्वार् हत्यां रह्या स्वार् वास्त्रः स्वार् हता । म्नामान्यत्याताम् वताराद्यात्यत्वत्तात्वत्तात्वात्तात्वताः

क्ष्यानाः भैतनाः जान्यानाः ताज्ञन्ताः अव स्ट केन्द्रात्मान्याः क्षेत्राः अव स्ट केन्द्रात्मान्याः क्षेत्राः अव स्ट केन्द्रात्मान्याः क्षेत्राः अव स्ट केन्द्रात्मान्याः क्षेत्राः अव स्ट केन्द्रात्मान्याः क्षेत्रात्मान्याः कष्टित्मान्याः कष्टित्याः कष्टित्मान्याः कष्टित्याः कष्टित

म् ल्यार्थ्य वायार्त्र स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर् कुरार्य्वाअष्ट्रताविताची र्वर्वाताप्रकुरार्य्वाअष्ट्रवार्ट्यात्राक्ष्र र्यायासक्याकित्यावेताल्या क्रा. यो अक्यार्यियात्वर्वर्वर्वरायाप्राक्तर्यावः मक्री परे ने रेने श्रेन अरमाया मार्म्यमाया सर मिरे मेरी मार्म नाम श्रीत्यम् केत्राचारेवाचे त्राचे त्रवारा दित्ता में निर्मा में निर्मा केत्रा का ८८। द्रम्बेव अभयदेव के सूर्य के के व्यान के ने के नाम मार्थ के स्थान इत्वरास्यायत्रात्रित्वेनार्ये वर्षेन्यक्रान्द्रम् देष्ट्रस्र त्रवनास्यते कु मि प्रमाना नरे वर्दा तावा नरे वर्षा के सार्त वे देवदवा न हैं स्मार्ग व वर्षा न्ता । ग्वास्य नारे क्या ने ग्वा अक्या वे। त्वर अनार हा स्था ने ग्वा अक्या ने प्रा त्रेत्रका मानाना स्वादा स्वादा सारका क्रमा ग्रीनगरित्य दिरे प्रेर्न्स सर्वाता पास्त्रास्त्रत्ते नहें नहें स्वास्त्र । अवदास्य से में देह से नि के के देते नर्ने सूर्ये कुषायिका आस्त्रिमाराष्ट्र देवा न ते स् , लवे करे . कर . धाव हूर्य. राष्ट्र-क्रियानीवासक्यानीयान्यान्यास्यारहेनानीचे देन वेवरना त्रुवर्गाव अर्द्धना तर्रा देवरवारा दरा गुवाहेन राहेरना त्त्वान्नव्यक्तानान्नान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त् मर्खेना बेर न दी। ता अ नी नदेव नद्दा हर्नेना नहें नदेव न हैं देना भादर हैं निर्धित्र में निर्मित्र की एतन की निर्धित हैं में हैं के दे के हैं है। यें ने हैं वे राप्ट्रेनिक्षित्वे। रहेन्हिन्सिन्तिः हैं अत्रादान्द्रः हेन्द्रिन्तिः हैं देते देने मूर्वित्वि लग्नेकर् प्रकृतिमान्ति हुन्ति ना द्वामाना माना माना हुन्ति परित्ने प्रदेश कि. में लूट त. नुर्वा रे पूर्व अक्ष्य वार्षेश स् स्पूर् सूत्र रे रे रे रे स्थात्रात्रात्र्रात्र्रात्र्यात्र्रा र्गावःअक्षात्रास्यात्रास्यात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रा

रासमार्सेन्यरेक्तावी द्वेन्त्रा वर्षवरद्वार्यमार्वेन्यवेत्रात्वेना मुन्नर्गे, एड्नामाता तम्मार्भेत्याता तान्त्र गुन्ने पुरं के पुरं कर्माता पुरं प्रसम्बद्धान्य म्यान्य न्यान्य । स्वर्षाम्य । स्वर्षाम्य । स्वर्षाम्य । स्वर्षाम्य । प्रास्त्रम् राज्यम् अवसामितान्य निर्मन्तर् निर्मा विष् तसाचरतपुः हैर्यानइषाः जमाः मुद्रानर हैरता देन खेन दिश्यत हैंग. くみかららはいいとうかいかいととといるのできていましているというかいいろ क्षेत्रप्तिवाद्वात्रमाष्ट्रवाद्वेत्रा देलस्यात्रम्त्रप्तिवाद्वेत्राद्वेत्रात्रम् अ. प्रचित्र मूंवित्र मुं वंश त्र्रीत मैंवावस्य ता स्र मुंदर अहर नवदःने प्येदःदःने द्या स्तार्याव अस्तावी वर्षाः मुन्दन्यमाया द्वरावना तर्वाया न्त्रिश्चन्त्रम् न्त्रत्या यादमा म्या मान्या मान्या मान्या मान्या प्राप्त स्था स्था स्था स्था स्था स्था स्था स तर्रा केस.विष्युत्राचार्यरायक्स.इ.च.चरा.श्र्वेताच्या. डेर्टा स. क्स. एड्ने म.टा. प्रमार्ट्स में. ये न राष. येका हैर केरी। देनिवेन्द्रने प्रतिने देश्वेन अक्षाने। वर्षा मन्त्र ने वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा वर्षा अवस्तिरं दे एसे एकना या प्राति व वर्ष वर्ष वर्ष वर्ष की में रटा सर्वायवर स्रेर्वर स्रिंडि हिर्म्य स्र्वास स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय स्वाय मी.एदर.वस.वर.त. पा.लव मूनासाई. इंडा हैर.त.रे. य पुव दिन प्रीव. र्याचानक्यात्राम्स्येवतास्यान्त्रम् क्रियाचीत्राच्या रट्युमाक्षित्वविन्तः मुन्ति भ्रम् भ्रम् भ्रम् । भ्रम् । मुन्ति । सामानि । सामानि । सामानि । सामानि । सामानि । सैनत्रत्रेन में ता ज्नामा है र त्र हे नेमा प्रदेशमा ता प्रमा मैं न ता सहरे.

की. लूरेलार्रेरी रे.लुंबाहर्। श्रवंताक्षित्रात्माक्षेवंत्रप्रं श्रवंतवरात्र्रं बर्त्यास्य स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर ४८.ल्.कट.बट.फरा.बर.चर.अ.एकर.च.र्यव्ये हे.सूर्यातासरसा.केस.क्रेस. वर्षवत्तप्रक्रादेर्यत्येशःक्षात्वविद्विष्ठः धनमानिकाञ्चरः वास्त्रः क्षार रटा कुरा रम्। रम्। त्रीयानी मार्चेमा अर्था क्षर हिंगान रामा सूर्यमा ही... एह्नेश्नाताक्षाम् प्रत्नात्रम् भेत्रित् ग्रेत्राच्या सर्वास्या म्बर्क् म्यान्त्र मित्र विदा तर्वे निर्देश निर्देश निर्देश मित्र में मित्र मित्र मित्र मित्र मित्र मित्र मित्र हीर. श्रीस्वासायाववातात्त्रें सेवानी क्रूमा होर परेवायाया मूलन्यार्धिया वेसार्थार्स्साल्यात्रात्र्या र्वतविष्ट्रात्र्वाक्ष र्राष्ट्रभारे त्रमा अवःसरन्त्रदालेदः त्यरमारान्त्रत्रमा वयः प्रकृ र्.धर.ध्या. अ. ध्यादा लेका विकासित्याता हिंदा हिंदमा सीया ही लूब. एवरदा द्राया श्रीधनाती एक् क्षा प्राचन नाम निर्मा से वेश सेवश. पर्यातिकित्यात्र प्रतासाम्यात्र । श्रीयमाप्त्रीत्रेत्रेवत्यात्रात्याः म्यानम्तर्मायते स्राप्तिः स्तर्भि

LESSON FOUR

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARI		A SECTION OF SECTION O	
42.41	Buddhist	DE.D.	compassion
र्शरमा के प्राप्ता	Buddhist	えている。美世から	to perfect, to complete, to finish
ব্যাৰ মক্ত্ৰাধ্যম	i.e., the Buddha, the Dharma, and the Sangha	नुष्ठःसःल्यानःयः	unmistaken; un- erroneous; unper- verted
ल्यं न हव	qualities; virtues	MC. 241.51.	right; real; perfect
मेन्नहरू.	expectation; re- liance upon	तसम्बद्धाः	arya (see note 11); noble
त्रहुँ र	to go into; to be put into	হু 5	mental continuum; person
तम्र-म	the round of existence (sem-	24 d	to stop, to cease
	sara)	720	real, actual
हैनानहरा.	misery	₹.31.	real, actual
REALEN EN	to fear	\$81.	to ascertain, to know
Rain.	to save	नहरार्थे	firm, stable
ब्रह्म.य.	power; ability; potentiality	कें	to obtain, to get
चेट्रकेश	to trust in; to have confi-	33159°	pure; purified
	dence in	AN.	object
B D. Z.	obscuration	关. 文.	nature
म्बर-दन्	all	35:47	specifics, par- ticulars
म विद्राया	wisdom, knowledge (H)	and the second	

रॅभ-नवुदः	to identify; to recognize	वृंब-भूरमा	passion (see note 4, Lesson 5)
मक्र	sign, mark	श्रुवस	power, force
दर्भ : 95:	example, sign, mark	य. य. छ. य.	ordinary indivi- dual, (see note 11)
SIBR'WAY	limitless; and have	ন্দ্ৰন্	person
लय.जाना.	part; limb	45	sickness, disease
वन् कन्यः	habit-formation;	अव्यः	to suffer
	propensity	24.5	fierce; frightful
स.धसारा.	without exception	45.4	sick-man; patient
yes. 2.	object of cognition	अप्रिशःच	expert
अर्ब्स्स्स	from t	287	to give
	direct percep-	वनःस	deep, profound;
अध्यः द्वितः	gone to the end; perfect	८८ूपानी.	explicitly; directly
लेख्य.	gnosis	बदःवार्थेवाः	
के देह	partiality	15	nurse
न्न सं से दः स	unsurpassable	बुर जम	activity; conduct
लुन सुमर्के वृ	wadmirable; well-	\$4.0.835.	to follow, to follow according to
र्वेन्यानः	obstacle, im-	लश्च्याया.	auxiliary, helper
1. 1. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4. 4.	N) direct	89.4	sage; muni
अर्थ.	power	AR.	to clear away,
र्व.र्षाता.	ultimate		to remove
राज हेन्य	phenomenal; conventional	124.d.	to transfer
~~~	Wildelic Tollar	4CA.C.	valuable
मक्यांप.	superior,	05	
S	excellent		to restore; to recover

### EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

what kind of (person or thing) to go to for refuge, to take refuge in at least; at the lower extremity to have an understanding of roughly to rely upon evil destiny, unfortunate destiny from the very heart the two obscurations from the root cessation and path according to the custom, correctly, properly companion often; many times well. as it is (i.e. ultimately true) (see note 8) as many as (i.e. conventionally true) (see note 8) directly perceived; before one's eyes inconceivable the Truth of Path the Truth of Cessation the three vehicles

नक्षत हेर्न्थ

full vow (i.e. of a biksu) from . . . on; from . . to treat (medically); to cure to use, to employ to help by urging on उद्यास्त्र (१ नुद्र्य) to experience; to practice

#### NOTES

- 1. 559 "an insider" in contradistinction to 3509

  "an outsider" carries no other connotation than a Buddhist in contradistinction to a non-Buddhist.
- 2. 55. the creatures who have gone to the evil destinies. In Buddhism, these are the animals, the denizens of the hells, and the <u>pretas</u> or tantalized spirits, all of which endure especially prolongued or intense physical suffering in contradistinction to the 5.25 the creatures who have gone to the fortunate destinies, i.e., men and deities, the former enduring comparatively slight physical suffering whereas the latter, although many classes of these are said to be without physical suffering, are said to experience mental anguish. These are discussed at some length in lessons 13 and 15 respectively.
- "the two obscurations", i.e., the passion obscurations and the knowledge obscurations. The passion obscurations are hindrances mainly to deliverance from the round of existence or <a href="mainto:samsara">samsara</a>. The knowledge obscurations are hindrances to all-knowledge or omniscience. These are discussed at some length in lesson 18.
- 4. されてまた Some expressions, the preceeding, ふら、 竜利方で "to find confidence", ちらいます。

"to develop faith", A' AN' "To produce doubt",
etc. are constructed with A' which is probably an accusative
A' and the word following the A' is then the object of
the action of the verbal idea contained in the above verb-derived
nouns.

5. 데리 - which is often used in comparative construction
like 러리라'조작'데리'저도리'플리'씨국', 5학'라'구'.

"A Buddha has more virtuous qualities than sentient creatures.", here forms a kind of disjunctive comparison and signifies "other than" or "except".

- 7. 전 5' "The objects to be eliminated" are the various

objectionable qualities which are got rid of through the development of the Buddhist paths, in particular the two obscurations

( ) noted above, the misery of the round
of existence, etc.

- 8. 98.8.8.9.95.8.85.4 ject of cognition" is synonymous with a dharma ( & ) (see note 5, lesson 5), and an object of right cognition ( TRA'S'). All these terms signify an existent such as is ascertainable as to its existence by means of correct cognition. These existents in turn are either bona-fide phenomena in which instance they are variously (535'4' ) named and conceived, or they are ultimate objects of knowledge of things just as they are ( E'R'A' ), - ultimate in the sense of being the final objects of understanding attainable on a given path searching for the reality limit of phenomenal things. The terms = 2 and = 35'4' consequently are synonymous with the Buddhist theories of two truths, an ultimate truth ( र्व द्व व्य व्य ) and a phenomenal ( तुन हेंब न देव पा ) or conventional ( क छुट न देव प (4) truth respectively.
- 9. == "to know by direct perception" (i.e. in this instance by yogic perception). Although an exhaustive treatment of the subject had to await the masters of logic, Dignaga and Dharmakirti, who distinguished

10. Wind - generally is used to signify gnosis or knowledge conducive to gnosis, gnosis here denoting the direct experience of 'spiritual' truth.

) - The word 55 means the mental continuum, i.e. the stream of psycho-mental moments or events constituting the individuality. Consequently the word 55 is often used simply to signify an individuality, a personality, a person. In Buddhism the Aryan individual is the person who through study, examination, and meditation has obtained the power of direct perception of the true or real via yogic-perception (see note 9 above). All other personalities are designated as ordinary individuals.

- 12. 25975 "the ten non-virtues" is a classification of ten non-virtues which encompasses the major moral evils.

  These are discussed at some length in lesson 14.
- "the three vehicles", i.e., the vehicles of Sravakas, Pratyekabuddhas, and Bodhisattvas. According to the Mahāyāna, these are the three kinds of paths set forth by the Buddha. The first two belong to the Hīnayāna, the last to the Mahāyāna.
- 14. NAN'SS In the modern spoken language the term means "animals". The Tibetans have also used this term to render into Tibetan the Sanskrit "sattva", an important term in Buddhism signifying any sentient or living creature or being with the single exception of a Buddha.

#### TRANSLATION

- I. What sort of person is called "a Buddhist"?
- G. In general the term "Buddhist" is applied via whether or not there is a taking of refuge which goes for refuge to the Three Jewels. The reason is that there is no way of being placed among Buddhists if there is not at least some thought of relying upon the Three Jewels once one has roughly an understanding of their virtuous qualities. Now, as for the way of going for refuge to the Three Jewels, one has confidence that the Three Jewels have the capacity to save from anxiety about the miseries of the round of existence and the unfortunate destinies etc., and the attitude which relies upon them from the very heart is the real taking of refuge. This is also called taking refuge mentally. With this sort of attitude the utterance of the expression, "I go to the Buddha for refuge" etc. is called taking refuge verbally.

Moreover, as for the Buddha Jewel, - he himself has extirpated all the defects of the two obscurations, and by way of his own perfection of the qualities of wisdom, compassion, power, etc. he is the perfect teacher who shows without error a refuge to others. The qualities extirpated and the qualities of knowledge belonging to (the Truth of) Cessation and Path of the Aryan individual which he teaches is the actual Dharma Jewel, and the members of the Sangha who rightly achieve these qualities and this actual Dharma Jewel is the right religiouscompanion who affords a refuge; this refuge taking which relies upon these when one has obtained a firm ascertainment of the above is likewise a purified taking of refuge. Otherwise, without having at least a rough understanding of the virtues of the Three Jewels, even though one often repeats the words, "I go for refuge", other than the mere benefit of saying the words, there will not come any pure taking of refuge.

As for the causes for taking refuge, - generally speaking, the principal causes are two, anxiety about whatever sort of misery there is, of one's self and of others, and confidence that the refuge-object has the ability to deliver from it.

- I. How does the refuge-object, each of the Three Jewels, have the power to protect from anxiety about the misery etc. of the round of existence and the unfortunate destinies?
- G. There is a way in which they can, and since one will understand

if one beforehand identifies the virtues of the nature and the particular qualities of each of the Three Jewels, - first the nature of the Three Jewels (may be set forth as follows): the Jewel of the Buddha for instance - his virtues of body are his possession of the endless qualities of the thirty-two auspicious signs, the eighty minor marks, etc.; the qualities of his speech are his endowment with the sixteen elements of eloquent speech; the qualities of mind are his endowment with the qualities of being completely rid of the two obscurations along with their inherent tendencies, with the gnosis which reaches the limit of perceiving directly all knowables, both phenomenal and ultimately real, with unsurpassable compassion which proceeds to all beings without partiality, with the perfection of inconceivable power and capacity to act without obstruction for the accomplishment of the noble aims of himself and others; such are his body, speech, and mind, and one possessing unsurpassable qualities of wisdom, compassion, and power is called "Buddha". The so-called Jewel of the Dharma is both the Dharma Jewel which is actual and which is conventional. The highest Dharma is the Dharma Jewel which is actual. As for this, the ultimate Dharma Jewel is both the Truth of Path and the Truth of Cessation, (that is to say) (the Truth of Cessation) belonging to the mental continuum of the Aryan (individual) such as is endowed with the Truth of Cessation which is the extirpation of whatsoever of the objects to be eliminated, (i.e.) the passions etc., by the power of the Truth of Path and also the Truth of the Path belonging to the Aryan individual (which is) the antidote effecting the extirpation of whatsoever of the objects to be eliminated, the passions etc. The two, the Truth of Path and of Cessation, are the actual Jewel of Dharma. The Dharma Jewel which is conventional are the scriptures of the Buddha which teach unerroneously these actual Dharma Jewels as well as the commentaries which explain their thought. Not only that, but also the smallest virtue up to (the greatest) of an ordinary individual's conduct which relinquishes the ten non-virtues is counted as the conventional Dharma Jewel. Similarly, the Jewel of the Sangha also is divided into two, the Sangha Jewel which is actual and which is conventional. That which is called the actual Sangha Jewel are the actual Aryan individuals of the three vehicles, (individuals) endowed with whatever of the Truth of Path and the Truth of Cessation. The conventional Sangha is an assembly of from four monks on up, ordinary individuals who possess the vow of a Bhiksu; .... this is called the Sangha which is conventional. To identify only roughly the nature of each of the Three Jewels is just the above.

The way in which the Three Jewels save others from fear for example, just as in the instance of delivering from fear of an illness a sick man who is siezed by a virulent disease, a doctor highly skilled in the method of treatment which frees from the nature of the disease along with its causes, a skillful doctor who gives medicine etc. with a skillful method delivers from the sick man's misery, - just so the Buddha, the Blessed Lord, knowing exactly the misery of living creatures and its cause, delivers beings from misery by way of teaching without error the deep path (which is) the method of release from this. As for the Dharma Jewel - like a powerful medicine which destroys the root of the illness and its causes, the Dharmas of Path and Cessation which were taught by the Buddha, provide a refuge which truly saves from anxiety by way of stopping and extirpating misery and the passions which are its cause along with the knowledge-hindrances. Likewise, the Sangha Jewel, a good nurse, stays together with the sick man, and however much he benefits the patient by following the skillful physician's method of employing good medicine and the conduct of walking, sleeping, eating, drinking, etc., that much the Jewel of the Sangha itself accomplishes according to the way the illustrious Dharma which is shown by the teacher, the Buddha, and it saves from fear by way of encouraging other companions to accomplish likewise.

Therefore, if the sick man doesn't take the good medicine given by a skilled physician, however excellent the physician, the medicine, and the nurse may be, there will be no deliverance from the illness. In such a way, if one does not by oneself take up properly the practice of the Dharma shown by the teacher, the Buddha, although the Buddha, the Dharma, and the Sangha are powerful, there will be no real deliverance from the fear of misery etc. It is stated in the scriptures, 'The Munis do not wash away sin with water, and they do not remove by hand the misery of living creatures. They do not transfer their own understanding to others. They deliver by teaching this very Dharma." Similarly, it is said in the Royal Meditation Sutra, "Having received much excellent and rare medicine, one does not swallow the medicine which will save one's life. The fault is not the physician's. The fault is not the medicine's. It is the fault of the sick man himself." By way of understanding well the virtues of the refuge-object and the way of going to it for a refuge, to take refuge is not only very important but it is like the gate of entry into Buddhism.

## **EXERCISES**

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Four.
- *1 शुरवरतास्त्राक्तातालवास्त्रवारेत्वारेत्रेवरात्राक्तिकारेत्
- *2 नर्गवस्थ बेनानमुकाता श्वनकासुर हर्ने सूरकानार तर्देन
- *3 रम्बंभक्ष्यान्त्रम् त्रिंद्रम् त्रक्ष्रम् वर्ष्यान्य स्वर्ष्या
- 4 ल रे.क. मैरिका पर्सार्टा रचा.चा. मैरका पर्से हे. किरानर नार रेरी
- 5 नर्गवासर्वानासुसर्दानामः माने भवादा वी
- 6 श्रीम्यात्रम्ति कुः नाव्यान् ने नारे रे
- र्टा १ क्षेत्रअस्त्री. इस-देना न्यूक्ता लूट.चर. क्रिटाला ता.चा.र. देनूका ता.
- 8 अटकाक्तामा असूब न मिरानू र प्रवास न मूर तार्रा
- अद्यान्त्रे अद्यान्त्रे
- *11 क्रान्त्रीव अक्ता कुन लेन ने निर तर् नहिना तार्स्य तह व नर्मा रेना
- 12 क्रान्त्रेव सर्मा ता वर नारामा के नवी व ना के न लेन यन न
- 13 क्रान्त्रीय अर्बनान्त्रीय केरा क्षेत्र वरा वरा ना नी नार्ड रें रेन
- १४८वी.प्रेचंत्र्य्वास्त्रम् अस्त्राचा चेराचर प्रत्याका राष्ट्रम् अतः क्रिक्
- 15 देने तित्व दर्भेव सर्वन ता चुन्य भेव दर्भ स्या सारेदाया
- 16 मदम क्रिंग की नमार दर देश दर्ब दस रखेता की प सेवा न हुता

वास्त्रम्यान्त्रं ते देन्द्रन्त्यायि ह्रमान्त्रं सहना विवाय वे

र्वन्यायतिन्त्रात्वान्त्वान्त्वाव्यव्यान्तान्तान्तान्तान्तान्त्वा नर्गेन अर्देनानानेय के छिन्दरमार तर् थे निने ने ना

पूर्वास्थान्त्रम् त्र्वास्यान् वास्यान् कामान्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्या

रम्माराप्रकेश क्षेत्रमार म्मेन वशा

तत्त्रमान्त्रत्त्रं कुर्नार्श्व ह्वान्त्रेत्रं स्वान्त्रं व सर्वा र्यान्त्र

रकारदेवत्र्य्वास्त्रम्नान्त्वर्तान्त्वर्त्वान्त्वर्त्त्वर्त्त्रम्

R5:451

सेट्याट् अअम्द्रेट्टा सर्वाच्यात् वटात्म्यात्यात्यात्याः ताः । रश्वासक्ष्यात्यात्वात्रात्त्रीयात्र्यात्यात्यात्यात्याः भीतः १ मेर् रत्. श्रर्-दाकान्दर-पका

क्रम्त्रोव सर्वाने श्रवन वर्त्तर दि श्रवन दि ।

श्चर्यम्यः यः रेता

न्द्रम् संस्कुत्रमास्य संस्कुत्रमान्त्रम् वित्रम् वित्रम् संस्कुत्रम् とか、ちょうならいといろといろと、あり、からかっとうかっとう

रत्याता स्था निर्द्यातातात्त्त्र्यां वा स्वा नत्याता स्वा पर्यास्त्रम् त्रमा स्रेन्या स्रेन्या स्रिन्या स्रम्या द्विता मंद्रा प्राम्य त्रंत्वरःस्वाताः अर्दरः यथा

B. Take all the asterisked sentences in Exercise A, and if the sentence is plain, change it to honorific. If the sentence is honorific, change it to plain.

Key to Exercise B:

- 1 तर्नानान्त-तर्नानावरनान्त्र।
- 2 तर्ने द्वरमा येनस द्वरमा
- उ म्निर्म्या । पर्यम् । निर्म्या ।
- 11 र्स तहें व देने रा र्स तहें व न वर दर्ग मा
- ध्रवः नाम्ना ध्रवः नाम्ना ध्रवः नाम्ना ध्रवः नाम्ना
- 53 असमानी हेरामा असमानी अपीरमान सान क्यावी

### REVIEW

Change the honorific level of the following:

- 1. 18イナイ・カ・ヤ・カ・ヒュ・のまからいかり
- 2. विंदाना सर विषया दुसाद नुदार में ना केंद्र से दार दी
- उत्तानिकारान्त्र। अस्तिकारान्त्र।
- 4. रेस्येन्स्रेन्द्रायात्वात्वात्वात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्यात्या
- 5. श.र्रेड्ये.क्ट्र.वारामात्र.त्.रं.वारामात्रेट्र.वार्यः हिट्यावहनाता.म्रेट्रया
- 6. र्स्वर्यं स्थान्त्री भाष्ट्रवाद्यान्त्रीयाः ताः विषाः तर्द्वन्त्रव्याः याः वे ख्वाद्याः वाः दे खुनायः

- 7. त्राचा न व द दिया ता सा से द र से सा धा न वे सा द दे ता था ने द प्या
- 8. रतुः अन्देनायार्ह्यमादुनार्थः देनुसार्थना रहेकान् कराया केरा
- 9. ब्रेंबामान्सांकेबानहिनासान्बन्सम्बन्तेषुण्येदारार्वे।
- 10. अर्द्धन्तन्त्रास्यान्त्र्रः निर्मान्त्रः निर्मान्त्रः निर्मान्त्रः निर्मान्त्रः
- 11. न्यमित्र्रीन न्यों मास्या नामा के न स्राप्ता मेरा
- 12. द्वी प्रतेश द्वारमाय केंद्र सर देश देश मान्दर वी र्य द दश
- 13. र्क्ष्मरास्मर्केट्रानुसाकेम्द्रेश्चायामाने ते स्तराता क्षेत्रसामान्तराने पर्
- 14. कुन् सन् छेल निस्न न्या ना ना मान वितान विद्यान करा की में ना स
- 16. 童子にないると、る母、日から、我な、田氏子、我、日、大、五、子、八、日、子」
- 17. क्रान्त्रास्त् स्त्रान्त्रेयाक्षान्त्रेयात्रियात्रेयात्रेत्रः
- 18. वॅर्ष्मसायविसाम्बद्धां में द्राया रेट्र

# **LESSON FIVE**

क्ता विरत्तर्वत्तर्भं मुन्नर्भं ना हरा मिन्नर्भाति । यर: लेंद्रय: नेद्रायमा देन्त्रेश्नाताकिरतरास्याङ्गाल्दानान्त्री वटत्त्रं स्वानाम्यानास्य अवरतालवालर्वरताष्ट्रभावरतप्रेच्यावश्राम् नालवार्वरे त.लूर्ताअ.स्री श्रेस.बदाराष्ट्र.क्षेत्राध्यात्रव.ताष्ट्र.श्रेच.अव.व वदारा भवादारे होत्त्वरात्रे स्वार्भेत्या भवादारे हारा नगरा पराया क्रिस्ताक्तित्वित्ते स्तर्तित्वात्त्रे विद्यात्त्रे । द्वार्तितात्त्रे । द्वार्तितात्त्रे । मित्राक्तित्वे। प्रदेश विश्वभग्न प्रदेश मेर्याय। वर्ग प्रमायमा इर्द्धियानद्रमय। कुर्यात्रभसाद्भित्वान्त्री भ्रत्यात्रभारा न्त्रभारकेर्नित्रहेर्नित्रकार्मक्रम्भक्रियाचेर्नित्र देवर्नित्रमार्यः अभ्याक्ष्यान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान सर्क्रा अधना श्रे स्वाता त्रेन की लूर तारेता दे पापर र्वेशता पा स्वेशत यास्तिमान् अर्रेने ने असा एता तहेना देता । तहार होना हेता ने तर निवन र.प.भ.म्यात्त्रभ्यम्पत्ता विभावात्र्यम्।पर्द्रभावाद्यस्य मिनामार्सनामाना द्वान्त्रमार्ने मन्दर्भ र्ने मन्दर्भ मन्दर्भ मन्दर्भ क्वाया

 क्ष्यत्यात्रम् विन्त्रीक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रम्। स्यान्त्रम् क्ष्यत्यात्रस्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् विन्त्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् विन्त्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् विन्त्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्षयात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्षयात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्ष्यात्रम् क्षयात्रम् क्षयात्रम्

क्राञ्चलका क्रिया क्रया क्रिया क्रय क्रिया क पाश्चित्राच्याः प्रदाहरा अस्या उदायाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः मिनद्रना अद्दर्भ नद्रश्चन्त्रना अद्रश्चर्या अद्रश्चरा अद्रश्चरा स्त्र स्त्र स्त्र स्त्र स्त्र स्त्र स्त्र स्त्र वदःनीयद्वाः केद्रदेश्वेळेताः ग्रीयद्वाः केद्रात्यः केष्ठितः यस्याः वत्वाः वीयद्वाः भरातानु रार्वासा वाराजवान्त्रमात्रा स्थानियान्त्रीर्देवीयान्त्रसम्भा श्वातालवक्द्रीतिमान्यालवालटा केत्रा श्वाताना कर्त्राचात्रमा त्रिमान्य अलेव। देलव्यक्तक्तात्रमध्यम् वत्तात्रम् वत्तात्तात्वे। स्ट्रं लक्ष्मियात्ते। स्मार्थमा जारवर क्रिरं वर्ष हररदेवर वहना रत के अवत ह स्मार्ग र के विवास सुर्यं त्यश्रेर्द्रं शर्द्य ह्याय ह्यायक सेर् नहितास्ति रद्य विवालेना विद्याय नाववाद्यः श्रम्भारत् क्रिमात्मभास्य स्वावितः। देः तद्वते तद्वात् तद्वात् स्वायाः क्रिमात्म्वा इट. अट्टर प्रमास्यात्वाचा वे वट्टरि श्वा अट्या भवाति । के स्थिता ने द्वा वर्डियूरअस.रे.प्रसाक्ष्मानेवरित्रेय्त्रेयार्वात्वेत्रत्वाःक्षेत्राःक्षेत्राःक्षेत्रः ल्रिक्स नक्स स्रम्भा छ ने अव। रे एटर न हे हिना महिना सर दनर इवाची नरमा अर रार.वटर् प्रेंच.अहए.श्रेंच.येंव.अहंवी लुव.वधर.ब्रेंच्या.श्रेंचप.वट.क्वेंयाक्त. अ.व.न.स्नम् त्रात्रात्तात्त्वात्तेनात्त्रात्त्रः द्राः नाडेनाश्चः द्राः म्नाः सेनायाः द्वारः

न्द्रित्येत्रदेश्याम् मान्यान्त्राम् नित्राचित्रम् मान्यान्त्रम् नित्राम् नित्रम् नित्रम् वित्रमञ्जूनर्द्धः वर्त्रात्रः द्वारा हार्यात्राचारात्रे वर्त्ते स्त्रात्राचारात्रे स्त्रात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रा ८। इशक्षिक्षे के स्ट्रिया अर दी नावद्यां भेर्य राजेश दे भर अवसारा तमार विवासिका र्पद्रम्तिन्नु न्त्रमा द्वारा क्रिया हिना माना माना स्वारा भवे हरे। द्वीर वर पार्ट्स लुन्नित्रे से वर्षावर तर्यं येता अवस्य माना लेव हर। लर कार्य त. प्रचार हिन् र्यसार्त्यानीसार्यः मिन्नायि हिंशाल्य मिन्त्रात्वा विशापने स्वात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रे स्वायते स्वात्त्र निवःश्रेह्रगानिकान्दर्वदःइवश्येष्वाचनवाक्षेत्रपायसामेवर्णे भेवर्द्धः। द्वानिवेद्धः वसायित्वरत्तेत्रय्तास्य स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः श्रीत्वास्मानिकातात्वेत्वेरालाचे। श्रीत्ववित्रत्यत्त्रित्वत्रिक्षात्रक्षात्वस्त्रत्वित् नक्रमानार्वेषेत्रामानान्वेष्रम् स्राम्यारमा स्राम्यान्य स्राम्यान्य स्राम्यान्य स्राम्यान्य बर्की.ल्ट्नान्टी ट्र.ल्ट.प्रिय्ट्य द्रिया नद्राता की.क्रिक्व व्यट्ट ता बना ना की स्था अवर विवा त्वेत्रमारहेव भवा ने स्वायमा रोन ने ने मोत्रवेदां ने नदमा भरति हैव अर्व स्थार स्थिताराष्ट्राप्तसाम्चीयरेवातालवाहरः। रेशास्त्रास्य एवं स्थास्य स्थास्य स्थास्य स्थास्य स्थास्य शुन्तरास्त्र्राप्त्रित्रतिर निर्देशस्त्राचार्त्ताप्तर्वास्त्रवास्त्राचार्वे वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः अभाभागान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्राम् वर्षेत्रात्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त रटा माम्यास्त्र नमार परिश्वामित्राम्यास्त्र ने क्षेत्र के नित्यामा स्याप्य स्था है। हर तरं हबाह के बाह्यां कर लाका दें हुड़ वेस स्थान रहें। वेन अक्र में हर्न रार हरें। इर्। वेनप्रस्त्राभरक्ष्मानर्। विनापर्या भारत्यासानप्रास्त्रा हेवार्ष अर्व एकरन्त्र हे तेन अर्थ अववन्तर्य अर्थ के के मान क्या पर्या में क्या पर्या में तर. एस ए हमा द्वारा होता अक्ता है निका प्रवेश की जूर ता रही।

## LESSON FIVE

VOCABULARY			
मुनःसदतः	tenets	\$ (PA \$ N')	to count; to reckon; to
र्वेच.शबट.ये.च.	one who holds the		calculate
6 3	tenets of (see note 1)	595	power, force
B7:47	difference	दर्ज इ. ध.	effect, result; fruit
5.4.	view; theory	050//0555	to so beyond:
35 25 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5	in addition to	RZU.(6824.)	to go beyond; to transcend
47.5	seal; mudra	रडेव	to draw out, to elicit
प्रदेश श्रमः	caused, condi- tioned, samskrta	75.59E.	independent
श्.हनायः	impermanent	RA.	action, karma
34.428	defiled	संस्थान हिंगाना	Yogācāra
वदवाकोदः	without a self, non-self,	ब्रेंच्याः झं .व.	Vaibhāşika
	anātma	अर्.ह.त.	Sautrantika
B. 24. UN. 324.	nirvana	स्टार्स.	skandhas, (mind- body) aggregates
99.	pacification	255.0	different
SEN'E	an actual exis- tent (see note 3)	B. 515.	partless, with- out parts
न्नद्रक्त	moment, instant	चाइचा.सं.	single, unitary
STACO DO DE	pot, jar	B2.501.	particular quality property
A'A'	hammer	र्जेट.श	higher
19.0.	to die	चर्याः स्वयः	for the time being

dispute, debate; discussion

CARAS position, status

SARAS austerity.

penance

Brahma

PREA Visnu

REA FA mundane, worldly

Brahma

Visnu

mundane, worldly

actualized, present actually
(in contradistinction to potentially)

### EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

まっている。

まっている。

まっている。

まっている。

これでは、まっている。

これている。

これでは、まっている。

これている。

これでは、まっている。

これている。
これでは、まっている。

これでは、まっている。

これでは、まっている。

これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。
これでは、まっている。。
これでは、まっている。。
これでは、まっている。。
これでは、まっている。。これでは、まっている。。
これでは、まっている。。
これでは、まっている。。

त्र) शर्वाद्यः धर्मा स्मित्रः दाः धर्मारः विमाः मान्द्रः देः

the other schools (i.e. the non-Buddhist schools)

some . . others

to supress, to push down the head of

NOTES

- 1. 1938 R' and 1938 R' (philosophical) tenets and tenet holders, respectively. The term is also applied to a class of more or less pedagogical literature which presents systematically, from very briefly to at great length, the theories of Indian philosophy, both Buddhist and non-Buddhist. Here, the classification of the major philosophical systems or schools of Buddhism employed by Tibetan scholars is fourfold, i.e., the Vaibhāṣika, Sautrāntika, Yogācāra, and Mādhyamika. Each has a variety of subdivisions. The classification of the four schools and their subdivisions may be shown as follows:
  - 1 Vaibhāṣika 회·격제·필·각· 3 Yogācāra 괴리지·중리·리· 18 sub-schools (A)

(B)

2 Sautrantika यार् यः 4 Mādhyamika ५५ थः थः

(A)

(A) Svatantrika

(B)

- (a) Sautrantikasvätantrika
- (b) Yogācāra-svātantrika
- (B) Prasangika

The Vaibhāṣika and Sautrāntika are Hinayana theories. The Yogācāra and Mādhyamika are theories of the Mahāyāna. Also, the two former are often designated as the lower schools of

Buddhism, and the two latter as the higher schools.

Tibetan scholarship has produced a large amount of this siddhanta, and systems of thought. As this literature is based upon Indian models like the Madhyamikalamkara of Santaraksita and the Tarkajvala of Bhavaviveka, its perspective is that of the Madhyamika. Consequently, the arrangement of the Buddhist schools from the Vaibhasika through the Sautrantika and Yogacara to the Madhyamika, in that order, is an ordering of the Buddhist theories from the comparative realism of the Vaibhasika to the no-realism of the Madhyamika, the Sautrantika and Yogacara occupying intermediate positions according as they accept fewer and fewer realistic theories or presuppositions.

2. \$\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{1} \sqrt

3. 558'5' - In everyday language "a thing". However, in Buddhist philosophy the ascertainment of the actual thing is just as important and controversial as in European philosophy. The meaning of this term in Buddhist philosophy cannot be given here the treatment it needs and deserves. For the purpose of our context it suffices to note that it signifies a caused or originating entity in contradistinction to an uncaused and permanent one like space. The definition of a thing being "to be able to perform a function" ( 33'85' 크레니 ) all the schools of Buddhism, except the Vaibhasika, have agreed that only a caused or originating entity can be a functional entity, viz., an actual thing. A consequence of this is that all actual things ( 55%) become impermanents, and this appears to be tautological, because even by way of a definition which is not self-contradictory, a permanent entity like space cannot be allowed at one time to be nonproductive, i.e. performing a function, and at another time producing an effect, say motion, for in such an instance it would become impermanent by way of a change in

its nature.

- 4. 25 5 5 7 (Sanskt. klesas) "the passions". Here the word passion which is being used to translate 25 5 5 7 7 needs to be taken in its etymological sense of "to suffer" (Lat. passus), a sense which it often has in western ethical philosophy, in other words, the passions viewed as afflictions of the mind or psyche. In this sense also "passion" is quite wider in scope than just a synonym for a strong attachment to an object and encompasses all the affections characterizable as impediments to emancipation, like hatred, anger, jealousy, covetessness, etc.

- 6. ショス・スコ・ログ・あら "from the Cittamatra (i.e. Yogācāra) up" means the subschools of the Yogācāra and of the Mādhyamika (see note 1 above).
- "the (psycho-physical) aggregates etc.". The five aggregates, the Sanskrit skandhas, are one of the principal systems of classification of the entities or elements ( ) into which Buddhist philosophy has analysed existence. The analyse "etc." means the ayatanas and dhatus, two other important systems of classification of the above. Among other purposes, these three systems of classification of existents are important descriptive devices in Buddhist philosophy for explaining the workings of personality, consciousness, etc., particularly with reference to the development of the path to emancipation.

8. एहेन्द्रियारे त्याया - "the mundane path". Buddhism distinguishes two kinds of path for purifying the passions, a mundane path ( तहेना हें र परे त्या अ ) and a transmundane path ( RETERINATION RETERNATION ). The former by the cultivation of transic meditation on the objectionableness of attachment and the comparative superiority of a mind free of attachment produces a mentality, or rather a progressive series of mentalities, gradually devoid of the attachments, excepting the most subtle; the latter by transic meditation on the Buddhist theory of no self ( agarage eliminates the passions through obliteration of their ground, i.e. the apprehension of a self. The former is said to bring about a temporary suppression of the passions, the latter their definitive extirpation. As for the "defiled" in "All defileds are suffering.",

#### TRANSLATION

- I. Is there a difference between the two, a Buddhist and a holder of Buddhist tenets?
- G. There is some difference between the two. Although all who hold Buddhist tenets are Buddhists, it is uncertain that all Buddhists are holders of Buddhist tenets. In general, if one is a tenet-holder who accepts a Buddhist viewpoint, in addition to being a Buddhist one needs to accept the so-called Four Seals signifying a specifically Buddhist theory. The Four Seals signifying a Buddhist theory are stated thus, "All causeds are impermanent. All defileds are suffering. All things are non-self. Nirvāņa is pacification."

Moreover, to say "caused" is to signify all real existents which are created by causes and conditions, or which originate. Whatever nature of change from moment to moment such real existents have is designated "momentariness" or "impermanence". Here, a pot etc. is also annihilated in each single brief instant, and this nature of change is called subtle impermanence, whereas the breaking off of the continuum of the seemingly identical object, like the destruction of the pot by a hammer or the death of a living creature etc., is called gross impermanence.

As for the "defiled" in "All defileds are suffering.", reckoning the 'defilements' as the passions, one calls defiled those things the activity and causal process of which
occurs through the power of the passions. Since all of these
do not go beyond the nature of whichever of the three kinds
of misery, they are called suffering. The three kinds of misery, for example, are: - the misery of misery, (i.e.) the
suffering of the feeling of pain etc., the misery of vicissitude, since the defiled happiness belonging to the round of
existence elicits or turns into the suffering (of pain etc.);
and the (process of) becoming of all defiled things, being
not independent but under the conditioning power of action
and the passions, is called the misery of an all-pervasive
conditionedness.

As for "All things are non-self.", - One does not count merely the virtuous etc. "Things" then, signifies all of whatever exists. Also, a non-self has both a no-self of entities and a no-self of individuals; nonetheless the non-self of the Four Seals needs to make (only) the no-self of indi-

viduals without making the no-self of entities. The reason is that although our own schools from Yogacara up accept a noself of entities, both the Vaibhasika and Sautrantika do not admit it. Consequently, as for the way of all things being without a self, - all the other schools admit the existence of a single nature (which is) partless, permanent, and different from the (mind-body) aggregates, a self which exists as an independent substantive, or an independent self which is controller of the entities of the skandhas etc.; a self such as this is rejected by scripture and reason, and the special quality of Buddhism which is not shared by others is its acceptance that (the above ens) does not exist. Although there is another way in which the higher schools of Buddhism accept a no-self of individuals which is much more subtle than this, it will not be discussed for the time being. sence of such a self which is a permanent, independent unity is common to all holders of Buddhist tenets. Nonetheless, it is explained that among the Vaibhasikas, some, the Vatsiputriyas and others, admit a self which is existent as an independent substantive and which is not designatable as permanent or impermanent, or the same as or different from the (mind-body) aggregates. Therefore, scholars have many disputes as to whether or not such a Vaibhasika is a holder of Buddhist tenets who accepts a Buddhist theory. Again, some scholars say that since these types of Vaibhasika accept a self of an individual, they are Buddhists merely; however, they are not holders of Buddhist tenets by way of their theory. Likewise, others say that even though they admit a self which is existent as an independent substantive, they are holders of Buddhist tenets also by way of their theory since they accept that there is no self which is an independent, permanent unity such as is admitted by the non-Buddhists; and so on, there are many ways of explaining this.

As for "Nirvana (lit. passing beyond sorrow) is pacification.", - having determined sorrow as the misery of the round of existence, one calls the status of deliverance which is pacification from the root or extirpation of this (misery) and its causes by means of the Truth of Path, its antidote. Moreover, the ultimate root of the passions, (which are) the cause of the misery of the round of existence, is the apprehension of a self. Inasmuch as the antidote extirpating this is the Truth of the Path which directly perceives the absence of a self, there is no way of extirpating the passions without meditating this (antidote), (the Truth of Path); and as the non-Buddhists never meditate the antidote which is the method of extirpating the apprehension of a self, the root of the misery

of the round of existence, they hold as a path of deliverance just some corporeal austerities like not eating food, placing fire on the body, lustrations in the water of the Ganges, etc. or some specifics endowed with defilement like the ceremonial offering of the bloody flesh of slaughtered animals; and then they accept that (through these) they obtain the highest pacification and deliverance; or they accept as the highest pacification some special properties of the mundane gods, Brahma, Visnu, etc., or some special properties (still) having defilements, like the alleviation of a temporary surpression of the arising of the passions such as are relinquishable through a mundane path.

#### EXERCISES

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Five.
- वर्तान्त्र में कर्ता वर्षित्र में वर्षित्र में वर्षित्र में वर्षित्र में
- 2 बट्टाते सुव अवत सुव भेव दाता नद तद विना भेवद वें सारा देता
- 4 प्रदेश क्षेत्र क्षा कर कर के में का ताल कर कर का चर पर ने
- 5 RSM. SM. 37. 34. 3. 3. 4. 5. 4.
- *6 अ.क्ष्मान्यः संत्रः स्वासः यः बेर्यः नेषाद्यः श्रेत्वेत्रवेतः नि
- *7 अम् प्रमान् अभार हर् द्वार तर् नार्म त्ये न्ये मारा मेर्
- * देना नहाम निर्मा ने हे तिराम निर्मा के ने में ने में ने में ने में ने में
- *10 क्रान्नस्य स्टान्य । स्टान्य ।
- 11 पू. ब्रह्मा क्रिन क्रिन
- *15 ट्रंक्र, क्रेन्ट्या अटाया अनुस्ति हैं अष्ट्राया में लवाया
  - मान्य संस्थाना । अनानी वर्षा केर व ना र सद्यक्षिता (मक्स तेव)
- 14 及、生生の生活、から、まって、日本」 14 及、生生の生活、から、から、から、から、から、から、から、から、まり、より、日本」

- *15 भ्रीनानवस्य अनुत्य नेरान्य वदाया भ्रेत्य स्वराय अन्तर्यः

  - 13 द्वना नहाता की हत नेना र तद्वेना रेट्र
- *19 प्रचाम् स्टाम्स्य म्यान्त्र स्टाम्स्य स्टाम्स्य स्टाम्स्य स्टाम्स्य स्टाम्स्य स्टाम्स्य स्टाम्स्य स्टाम्स्य
- *20 कुर्नेतात्यः र्क्सानियः अर्द्धनान् नाने नाने तत्त्वनिना तार्नेताः तहिन्त्री जेत्रमा
- 21 प्रविद्धिः र्षाः वः क्ष्मावन्ताः तहीतः स्वासः सेविदः क्षे प्रवेतः वि विश्वक्षः र्षाः वः क्ष्मावन्ताः तहीतः स्वासः सेविदः क्षे प्रवेतः वि रेता
- 22 128181917112.89-34-3-5-7-7-3-5-7
- B. Take all the asterisked sentences in Exercise A, and if the sentence is plain, change it to the honorific. If the sentence is honorific, change it to the plain.

## Key to Exercise B.

- 6 महेंद्रने नार्द्र नार्द्र ने
- 1 कियाता. यादीरकाता मु.रेस्या . याक्ष अरस्या
- ( के के कि के कि कि 8
- ० कि.च. के.बाबट.चे लूट.टा.चू।
- 10 नहें ने नहें नवर ने

12 2.35. -2. -195.]

15 MY-CI-RG- MY-CI-AJAC-CI-RG]

19 मूट्डिंग्ड - मूट्डिंग्ज्येवट्डिंग्ड

20 天村、田里村、町一大村、田里村、山村、山村、

## LESSON SIX

विर्तान्त्रास्याक्तान्त्रात्राक्तान्त्रात्राक्तान्त्रात्रात्रा त्रिमान्त्रास्त्राम् मान्त्रिस्तार् मान्त्रामान्त्रामान्त्रामान्त्रामान्त्रामान्त्रामान्त्रामान्त्रामान् अर्र-तर्माष्ट्रभाष्ट्य उठ्टेर् ही. लूर्टा नुर्दे नर्देश ना इ. ट्रेंडिंस जूर. ही. के का रावश हेर निर्देश हैं. र.चारुवेत्रकृत्मे स्वसासन्सक्ता मात्रा वात्रा हेत्य वर लूट द्वा मात्रा है अ.अ.ध्यानप्रेन्यप्रअर्भ्यामान्यात्रिःक्ताः ग्रीत्रिमान्यः प्रवारम्याप्त्राः १. ४र्ड्रे. हरा स्वरारेर. र.स्ट्रें रेंड् में राता के कर ला के कार्य प्रवास प्रवास रि. भे. ब्रेन हिन्द्र १ १ देव पेस रा हिना लूट ने ने दे ने म राहे अर्थ ने हिना मित्रार्त्रार्त्रातास्य केवार् वार्यम्य स्थाने अर्थे नामान् राष्ट्रविष्य रमत्रिःक्सण्याप्तिकानम्माराः भवात्रम् की र्यद्यानेता देलका.मै.मू. २०० पूर्ट एडिटमान्त्रिमान्त्रिमान्त्रमान्त्र्यान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान समार्यप्र-देरामार्श्वनामाः में राज्याना मान्यर में नित्र में राज्य माना नित्र क्रीर्यंत्र वर्टा एर्ट्रिंग क्रीलार्ट्य वसान्तान्त्र निर्मान्त्र निर्मान्त्र क्रीले न्त्रमा क्रिया मूर्या स्ट्रास्य छ । ना अत् । मुन्द्र दा न्त्र हिना प्रमा म्यमा मेप्रतिव तर्मा प्रतिकात म्या म्या मेरान् प्रतिका मेरान प्रतिका मेरान् प्रतिका मेरान् प्रतिका मेरान् प्रतिका मेरान् प्रतिका मेरान् प्रतिका मेरान प्रतिका मे मिना मूर् हूर्र वा वातामान केता राष्ट्र समाम् वि वर्षेत्र वार्षा वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र यटमा नर्ष्यम् एट्नियंग्नान्त्रम् हुमार्स्स् हेन्स्स हिस्वरात्त्रम् स्वास्त नर्या भारत्या मार्थित देव विका स्वास्त्र मार्थित प्रमा है ने वेश याष्ट्रातितिवेशनान्त्रान्ते से सप् याद्वा जयात्र सी यावान हें वर्

नम्बः ब्रैट्-नाबटः में इस्तर्भं त्र्ट् अः श्रे अस्तः पा श्रेषे न्याना ग्रे क्र्यः नास्त्राः बाषुनामः ग्रे क्र्यः स्ट्रास्त्रामः अर्ट् श्रेट्-प्राप्तः ग्रेट-तिस्ता ग्रेट-तिस्ता ग्रेट-ट्टा वापः प्रिण-श्रे-स्त्र्वः प्रेच्-त्र्वः प्रेच्-अर्थः श्रेष्ट्यः प्रेच-प्राप्तः स्त्रः ते स्त्रः प्रेच-प्रा ट्रा

मेर्न्ट्रस्वस्वयते स्रामानित्। र्था. में अर पूर प्रविस्तात्य में भारतमास्त्विता मिर मूर है ए पर्य क्रिन्द्रामाक्त्रान्त्रक्षेत्रमाक्षेत्रमाक्षेत्रमाक्ष्यात्रमाक्ष्याः सी नु:श्रापाश्चारी श्रीन्दिन्भागातातीतात्रीतास्त्रीता के स्वापकी र्रत्रक्र सूर्यात्वारदेव लेशा यह क्रवर वस्तर्दि हो ते कृत्ये. र्स्ट्रिंग् रेट. सेन्द्रिंश द्वारा ट्र्यान् में प्रेत्र केता सक्षेत्र वर जिल्ला है... ियःस्त्रमा प्रतिष्ट के वर्त् देक्तामत्मा क्रिया ही त्रापिष्ट दे दे नास्ये दर। द्रियाचीर्स्ट्साप्त्यीमार्ट्स्यक्सार्यप्रयद्वात्र्र्स्याक्ष्यं कु सर लुबा रिन केरी सेवानर रि.श्रेच स्त्रेशक्षेत्र तर अ एकिरवाक्स. हिमास्यामाहीत्रहेन्यामाई छर्ने होता वाववळव वित्रक्रमामा वेत्रव ह्याः अर रेट हिंद है जूर है रेट रेड हो से छा हुरा अर उद्देशना रेडा कुरी. एट्रियान्याः अक्रवन्तिः अर्ने सेते सेन्यान मान्यान प्राचिता मून्द्र्वे केव्यात् तर्ना वित्रा हिस्सा त्रा मान्या मान्या स्वासा हिन्स्व रा. बे. क्रे. इपायवरतारेरा दे. लवंदरा अधवः क्रवं के. व. क्रेरा मून्यन्त्रक्षेत्रक्षेत्रत्यात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रा मुक्ताक्रमा अर प्रामा अर् रायामा मित्रवार क्रिया कर कर मा कर पर मा कर मा क त्रम्भः व्यापात्तात्तात्त्रम्भः देवात्वेवः मृत्यः क्षेत्रः क्ष्यः वास्यः इर. धम. त्रें अ. धमन. हेम. सेचा अक्ट. हे. ये अम. में. हेरा व्रि. इम रामीका

टि.लट.ची. काचा.पा.ल.ट्रेंट.लूटी। टिएट.ट्रे.चाक्रेञ.बी.प्रै.एट्रेट्टा कट्यान्स्चीकात्त्र्वटका.धेर.ब्रेट.जूपा.ट.जिए.ट्रे. ब्रि.च.पि.र्षंत्रेत्रचे.चान्तुए.क्र्ट्रे.ट्रे.च्यूंचता.चवा.ट्टा ब्रिझ.क्ष्ट्रज्ञट.क्र्य्त्रसूप्तुच्ट.

चपुः देवीयाश्चाः एह् अन्ताः लट् अट्टा स्ट्रिशः ता भी लट्टा सूचा मैं सी देवा। ता तीया अस बिर्द्रिश्चां ता स्वास श्चिता के तूर्टा की रिका या हट कुर्वा सिंदी र दे थि कि. भट तू ता पूर्टा त्रिता विद्या स्वास श्चिता अट त्यू त्र सट ता र दि । क्षिण ता प्राप्त का ता प्राप्त की ता स्वास सिंदी स्वास सिंदी सि

म् म्म मिन्न क्रम्यम्यत्रिक्षाम् त्रवेक्षाः प्रेस्त्रित्र्याः स्त्रित्रम् स्त्रित्रम् त्रम् मुर्च. इट्। यट्ट्रक्र क्रि. रिएरिछ। यपु तम्ब तार्वेचना चेना प्रतिविधं देवे वित्रास्त्र चे स्की स्त्रेत. र्टा र्दिस विरस्त्रास्त्ररा रहा राजाया है हुन हुन हिन हिन तप का प्रियास दन कूर रेक्ट्रिंग श्रीमा श्रीवावा श्रीट्र परेंदी। लट.भवड़क्रें के त.सूर्य श्रीत त्रीत प्रहेंदे पर्ह्ये त. याष्ट्र स्त्य या सामा देता यालू त्या केटा रमरमेशित्रस्त्रस्य भेग्निम्भित्रस्त्रम् अरात्र नर्मभन्। हेर्ट्यू इरिअटए नुसा हुरामार्थे तुमा र्र इर्ट अ वैसाल र म्रास तर्मित्वर् इत्रिवासः संत्र्याने प्रवादिताने त्यानी त्यानी अपत्रम् वः वेर्याना स्याना स्याना सूत्रास्त्र-योवटः विमान विमान दिमा शिक्ष वान्त्र्रमा नान्त्र माना स्त्रामा हिना विद्रक्ति राज्यार्विट्ट्रिय्यक्षेत्रं ह्यायाष्ट्रियार्त्रे हे.विस्ट्रा हेर्यक्षेत्रयः मूर्यकारा पा.भ.भ अग्रप्तर्य मुंद्र किर्यू मास्त्रमार् अ.क्ट्र यं लेव क्ट्र विवि क्ट्रामास्त्रियर्त्वी टिलर्भिक्सानासरःसूर्वः श्रमा बिद्रस्वास्त्रामाः ग्रमा तासू ग्री वि.सूट येमा ए या क्षेत्र का ता नेवा र्ववित्राचिर। रे.ह्मा.अर्.सर.हरररवधेव.ह्माम.ग्रे.स्वान.वित्रामा र्यमानाक्र ब्रेनामानी म्वाचिता प्राचना प्राच्याचारा भ्राचिता भ्राचिता है। स्वाचारी स्वाचारा यःक्वे.की.भै.रैट.क्स.रूवातायस्मा धूट.क्ट्रमेर.लट.ट्येमार्थाष्ट्र.ह्येगा मि.स्टरमा. ए. त रीवा हूबामा की रूबा किवा होया न छ से व्या न केवा ता मिना मर रेर. म्मारी मिनार जार देवराष्ट्र अन्तर अराजका राज्या वसवात .... सुर्र में प्रमार्वे ने स्था स्वीसाय में शा

नर्वेत्रिक् में दें दें ने मार्था में मार्थिया है। श्रीटार्ट ही महिटार् हैं दें स्था है शिका में क्यापूर्र्रा वर्ष्ट्र क्रिं क्रिं विच विद्या क्रिं सवाक्टारी क्या पर्द्व या मार्थ ल्या दिमा क्या माराध्य स्त्रीमा शादि है। है से सारी पर्द्यामा तै.पा.र्वम्यस्त्रिमा.वि.य.मर४.स्त्री.स्त्रिक्यमाती द्राया.प्रमा.वेट्रविटाताक्षेपा. च्छात्रमान्त्रण्यास्यायात्रम। देशक्ष्यायाहकवात्राक्षवानु ने मान्त्रि स्तरानाक्षातिरम् कर्त्री रूवा केव प्रस्था हर। दे क्ष क्षा अर दिस्या क्र स्थित्राक्षात्रास्त्राप्तियात्रेय्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्या र्राम्माताच्या र्रप्तमालवाक्रम् स्याचित्रम् मृत्याच्याच्याच्याच्याच्याच्याच्या रमामानमार्थितामाश्चरारियामीस्यास्यास्यान्त्याः सूर्वनातिरान्त्राः म्यान्त्रित्र हा क्षेत्र में क्षेत्र में निर्मा निर्मा निर्मा निर्मा कर में हिंदा ना दे ता. हूर्रिटी मी हूं श किंवालर बुर की लूर्टा रूरी रूर अवर है में अला लेखा हरे. श्चित्रक्षेत्रताश्चित्रः स्ट्राप्तान्त्रः क्षेत्रः द्वेत् स्वितः श्वेतः स्त्रास्त्रः स्वितः स्त्रास्तः स्वितः स्ति । है। यू.क्.न.न्ब.क्वत्वर्त्त्रत्। यू.क्टा ह्या.प्रमानप्रत्यात्वास्त्रात्वास् नार्नामानानान्त्रः स्थान्यान्त्रः स्थान्त्रं त्यान्त्रं त्यान्त्रं त्यान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः र्य के का क्रिया की त्यार का ही ता ही राज्य कर की वायर है। तुर हि. की राज्य या त्याया. वस्त्राप्तर्त्त्वत्रव्यक्षाः वर्ष्याः वर्ष्याः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्ष्यः त्याक्रवाताक्षेत्राचारा स्वामा क्षेत्र ग्रीहर नद्या अर त्यंत्रीमा र्वशानवर्षः मंत्रीर्यप्रमासर मंत्रासा सार्यसर संग्रास सारा सार्यस्य रत्। इत्त्री क्रानिमा असार्त्व व व वा नी से वा की रूटा पा न ही र न प्रामानर स्यस्यायाय्य स्याचित्रः स्यायाः स्ट्रास्य ॥

# LESSON SIX

## VOCABULARY

54	to spread, to propagate
र्शक्ष	history, res gestae
न देव.त.	doctrine, teaching
वर्डेर (१ छे )	to divide; to distinguish
<b>BU.144</b>	royal line
स.स.स.स.च वर्ष	P.N. of a person
वर् स्ट्रिन्	title of a sutra
व स है ना करें	title of a sūtra
ने नरा दे हैं सर्	book
सर्या तस	dream (H)
हार्जना	generation
अर्बन द्वारा	dream omen (H)
र्रेट्नर्व हर्	P.N. of a person
रूप श्राचा में	P.N. of a person
2	sound; grammar
विव के	<u>lantsha</u>
ननुःकमः	dbu can, headed letters

35.5	Urdu
35.2	dbu med, unheaded letters
सुझ-हु-दा-	title of a grammatical work
हेरास.पड्ना.	title of a grammatical work
<b>新二美</b>	P.N. of a person
न नहन	P.N. of a person
नहुंद्र र्से	queen
Rag.	share
न्ने न कुन	image, statue (H)
नार्मानदेव लु (१ लुष	to invite (H)
नार्द्ध	to make as the principal; to be the principal
नहिनात्यना वदः	temple
ग्रं संन्	P.N. of a person
20.51.5. 20.51.5.	P.N. of a person
नाइ संतर्भेत्	invitation (H)
धुन प्रथाना ने नास	Avalokiteśvara
27	to translate

नार्देन	to start, to	TR'C1	long hair
The state of the s	open, to set up		bolt of cloth;
सि.संद.इ.८.५	P.N. of a person	52.62	ribbon
न न हैं। जनहरू	Sāntarakşita	लर्नास (१०५न)	to hang
d2.4.8.8.	Padmasambhāva	पर्हें द्राया	venerable,
वें अत्यामा में	Vimalamitra Lotsaba, trans-	तह्ना (१२इन)	to allow; to enjoin
77.2.2	Lotsaba, trans- lator	नगर है	hommage, service
comment of the	Vairocana	हें न स ह	Jinamitra
	P.N. of a person	コロコーロ	Ratnarakşīta
1 1 1 2 X 2 X 2 X	P.N. of a person	日本十日から.	retranslation
ES. 32.	P.N. of a person follower	द्रनाः वरः	correction, purification
त्र । त्रुन्ना मुख	"the lotus born" (an epithet of	मु सकेत	relative (H)
	Padmasambhāva)	25.27.81.	P.N. of a person
€ . g . T	extensively	\$ P. 4	kingdom
नमार देव	favor, kindness, service (H)	स्वार्च.	envy
ट्य-यार्ड्स.	to commemorate	त्रेन्दे	minister
35	to keep	इ. हेरा है.	P.N. of a person
सरयः नर्याः	ruler	मुता (१०म्ना)	to incite, to arouse
मि.रज.	P.N. of a person	RATEN (PATEN)	to kill (H)
स्र नर्य	donor, supporter	5R'35	kingship, monarchy
रवःस	hair (of the head) (H)	वर्षेत्र वर्ष्यानाहरः	to destroy; to level
\$ 8.	end	त्रवेवस (१८४वः)	to descend; to come down

BIRST PART to exile; to send out central Tibet P.N. of a place mark, trace P.N. of a place hermit P.N. of a place P.N. of a person arrow P.N. of a place to escape; to #flee M. COON. area custom NAP.N. of a person P.N. of a person P.N. of a person western Tibet とり とりい P.N. of a place through P.N. of a monastery

STATAR P.N. of a person REA' (PABA') to search for ceremony (ritual RN' action) P.N. of a person P.N. of a place eastern Tibet embers lha bla ma P.N. of a person P.N. of a person to be at (other than one's ordinary place) Dharmapala P.N. of a place P.N. of a person Sakyasrī P.N. of a person P.N. of a person 'SQ'epithet to die (H) grandfather chief

### EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

according to, relying upon

earlier propagation

later propagation

to receive (H)

object of worship

western year, year of the western calendar

pious king, dharmaraja

very precious, of great value

to model on

to initiate, to introduce

an object of worship belonging to one's share (of the family estate)

life-sized

fame

to study and practice (H)

great preceptor

a Lotsaba and a great Pandit

language, letter

in particular

greatly, widely

"the seven probationers"

to lecture on, to give explanation

the preceptor, the master, and the pious king

स्ताः अर्ह्त worship likeness, image here, there and everywhere religious veneration family expressed wishes; order (H) exactly to institute new language (i.e. for translation) to make progress, to progress respect and service the Bon religion evil thought and action to shoot an arrow quite many so much harm, injury discipleship-lineage great lama from . . . (i.e. of a person) secret preceptor to complete the number story, news "Divine Guru", Guru-king

न्त्रः नकुर्ने त

having patrilineal descent from similarly

unsuitable surroundings or climate taking it from that point; beginning from that NOTES

Tibetan history, Glang dar ma was killed by an arrow."

2. Result of the same uncertainty applies to services the name, of important historical figures have often acquired epithets, - probably to single out a specific person from among many others bearing the same name. In the course of time these epithets have become almost indissolubly associated with the names even when their original significations have become obscure, as in the present instance. Here wight is identified as Results in the present instance. Here wight is identified as Results in the present instance. Here wight is identified as Results in the present instance. Here wight is identified as Results in the present instance as his family name, his region of birth, literally "an elder" signifying a person of distinction, etc. The same uncertainty applies to Same Results in the shape enithet.

Exact determinations of the significations of the above epithets and the like must be left to modern researchers into Tibetan

- history. For the purposes of this book, both the names and the epithets are untranslated transliterations of the Tibetan.
- 3. 355755 "the three baskets", Sanskrit Tripitaka the Buddhist canon and its threefold division into the sutras, the abhidharma, and the vinaya.
- 4. 252 "the seven probationers" were the first Tibetans to be ordained as monks. Here, 25' is being understood as 3225' "to put or to be put on trial", "to test or be tested".
- Here eliptical for スラグラン イズ・おもら "to make to enter monastic life" or "to ordain as monks (nuns)", スマグラン being an intransitive.
- 6. 933 "venerable" a very common epithet in refering to monks in the third person; nuns are refered to as 933
- 7. Para and and and an inlaymen who held to the tantras" here merely signifies an important class of the religious but does not imply that monks
  also were not often holders to the tantras.
- 8. In the Tibetan histories generally explain this as signifying "that he carried the doctrine on his head", i.e. bore responsibility for the development of the Buddhist religion in Tibet.

- "the Bon religion", i.e. the original shamanistic type of religion in Tibet at the time of the introduction of Buddhism.
- and tantric vows". Of the three vows in Buddhism, the Pratimoksa vow, which in its sevenfold subdivision subsumes the vow of a bhiksu (see note 14, lesson 1), the Bodhisattva vow, and the tantra vow, the two latter do not entail any change in outer appearance and dress as do all the divisions of the former with the exception of the upasaka-upasika.
- regulations regulating the conduct of the Sangha, the formalities of monastic ordination and admission into the Sangha involves these three functionaries. The upadyaya is the member of the Sangha who sponsors and bears the responsibility for sponsoring a candidate for admission into the Sangha. He in turn selects another member of the Sangha as the acarya, the man who actually recites the ordination ritual. The secret

preceptor, who functions to examine privately and to resubmit a candidate to the Sangha for approval, is required under the Vinaya rules to be selected as a fifth by four other members, and hence there is a necessity for minimally five persons in order to confer a bhiksu vow and so admit into the Sangha a new member.

- and a full bhiksu vow". A man may enter monastic life ( 39' 5 25 ), i.e. by changing his garb, cutting his hair, following the monastery life, etc.; however, he does not become a member of the Sangha until taking the bhiksu vow( 535 声句で ). A single member of the Sangha functioning as upadyaya may admit another person into monastic life ( 39' ), whereas five are required for admitting another person into the Sangha. Also, from the point of view of the ceremonial, the formal confering of the bhiksu vow may only be done for a person who has already entered monastic life. Here, the two rites, i.e. of entry into monastic life ( 39'5' 25' ) and of entry into the Sangha or the directly follow one another.
- 14. △ → 'action" here signifies in general the "action" of the Sangha and in particular the "ritual action" of confering the bhiksu vow upon another person.

#### TRANSLATION

- I. How did the doctrine of Buddhism spread in Tibet?
- G. If one answers briefly according to Tibetan history how Buddhism spread in Tibet, from the point of view of time one distinguishes both an earlier propagation and a later propagation. As for the earlier propagation in the period of Lha tho tho ri gnyen bstan, the 27th of the Tibetan royal line, several books of the noble doctrine, the utterance of the Buddha, Mdo sde spang gong phyag rgya pa, Zam tog bkod pa'i mdo, etc. were received, and although in that period there was no one who understood their meaning, there appeared in the king's dream an omen which declared that in five generations one would come who would understand their meaning. The king counted these (books) as of great value, and because he held them as an object of worship, it is said that (here) one finds the bare starting point of the noble doctrine (in Tibet).

Then, at the time of the pious king, Srong bstan sgam po, the 32nd of the royal line, who was born in the year 617 of the western calendar, Thommi sambhota was sent to India to study grammar and the alphabet, and later Thonmi not only initiated the system of both the present Tibetan dbu can alphabet modeled on the Indian Lantsha and the present dbu med alphabet modeled on Urdu, but he also composed several commentaries on grammar, the Sum bou pa and Rtag 'jug pa etc. This king took as his queen, Kongjo, the daughter of the king of China, and Khribtsun, the daughter of the king of Nepal. The two queens each brought as her object of worship belonging to her share (of the family estate) a life-sized figure of the teacher Sakyamuni. The pious king along with his court built many temples of which the two principal are the famous temples in Lhasa which are the dwelling place for these two lords. He invited the teacher Kumara from India and the teacher Silamanju from Nepal, etc. and translated several sutras and tantras on the teaching about Avalokitesvara etc. The king himself also studied and practiced and afterward taught the Tibetan people the doctrine on Avalokitesvara and opened up the system of the (Buddhist) teaching in Tibet.

Then at the time of Khri srong lde'u bstan, the 37th king, born in the year 730 of the western calendar, about one hundred and eight pandits were invited from India, the great preceptor Santaraksita, the great master Padmasambhava, the master Vimalamitra, Kamalasila, etc. The great pandits and translators, these (beforementioned) pandits and the Tibetan translators, Vairocana,

Ska ba pal rtags, Cog ro glu'i rgyal mtsan, Zhan Ye shes sde, etc., translated into the Tibetan language many of the principal scriptures of the Buddha, the "three baskets", and the commentaries which explain their thought. In particular, the great teacher Padmasambhava propagated widely the teaching of the tantras. In the beginning the great upadyaya Santaraksita or-dained into religious life "the seven probationers" and established (in Tibet) the system of monastic ordination. He did much explanation principally on the system of the sutras as exemplified by the Vinaya of the noble doctrine, and the teaching of the sutras and tantras was spread widely by the followers of these two great teachers. Thus, the teachings of the sutras and tantras were at the beginning made widespread in Tibet by the three, the great upadyaya Santaraksita, the great acarya Padmasambhava, and the pious king Khri srong lde'u bstan, and because this was a very great service to the people of Tibet the so-called mkhen slob chos gsum have been made an object of veneration of the Tibetan people. In order to commemorate the service of these three, the custom of making and keeping images and thang khas of the three in the various monasteries and many houses of the laity spread everywhere up to the pre-

Next, in the time of the sovereign Khri ral, the 41st of the royal line, who was born in the year 806 of the western calendar, many temples were built. Out of his great religious veneration for the doctrine he offered the support of seven lay-families to every monk. Enjoining the venerable monks and laymen who held to the tantra to sit on the ends of ribbons hung from the ends of both the braids of his hair, he offered well homage and worship. He invited many Indian scholars, the upadyaya Jinamitra and others. Many scholars, the Tibetan lotsaba Ratnaraksita and others, by instituting new language (for translation) according to the expressed wishes of the king made well retranslations of the scriptures and commentaries which could not be translated exactly in the time of the former pious kings, and by way of correcting the doctrine they furthered its progress without deterioration. The time of the so-called earlier propagation of the doctrine is up to this.

Subsequently, Glang dar ma, the older brother of the pious king Khri ral, was displeased at his younger brother's having the kingdom and through envy could not endure the wide respect and service being paid to the Buddhist doctrine. In particular, the ministers who favored the way of the Bon religion, Sba stag sna and others, incited him to evil thought and action, and he killed Khri ral.

In the year 836 of the western calendar, Glang dar ma held the kingdom. During that time, many Buddhist temples were razed. Many members of the Sangha were killed or brought down to lay life or exiled from the country etc., and when it came about that there was no having of even a trace of monastic ordination in Dbus and Gtsang, a hermit of Yer pa named Dpal dor je of Lha lung shot and killed (Glang dar ma) with an arrow. Then, he took many texts of the Vinaya and Abhidharma and escaped in the direction of Mdo smad. Therefore, though Glang dar ma did not hold the kingdom over six years, once the teaching of the Vinaya was destroyed in the area of Dbus and Gtsang, (this situation) is said to have gone on for more than seventy years. At that time those holding the Bodhisattva and tantra vow (and so) having the customs of the laity did not incur injury to such an extent.

Also, three (men) Gstang rab gsal, Gyo dge chung, and Dmar Shakya, who were holders of the discipleship-lineage of the upadyaya Santaraksita, took many books of the Vinaya and the Abhidharma etc. and escaped first in the direction of Mnga ris in the west. There, as the west was not tolerable, they escaped in the direction of Mdo smad along the road north and practised meditation in the monasteries of Ten tig shel etc. During their stay there, the great Lama Dgongs pa rab gsal, asked them for ordination and full Bhiksu-ship. Then, since he requested this and since at least five monks are generally a necessity for (confering) full Bhiksu-ship, and (that number) was incomplete, they searched for two Chinese monks. Gtsang rab gsal was made upadyaya, Gyo dge chung acarya, and Dmar Shakya secret preceptor. The number for the ceremony was completed by the two monks of China, and they confered upon the great Lama monastic ordination and the vow of a Bhiksu successively. When afterwards the story of the continuation of ordination and of the Bhiksu vow at Mdo smad was heard at Dbus and Gtsang, ten men, Klu mes and others, went to Mdo smad and received the vow from the great Lama. They returned again to Dbus and Gtsang, and this extensive repropagation of the doctrine by way of their spreading the continuation of the ordination vow is called "the recovery of the embers of the doctrine from the east". The beginning of the "later spread" of the doctrine commences from this.

As for the way of recovery of the embers of the doctrine from the west, - it happened that the two so-called "guru kings", Ye shes 'od and Byang chub 'od, who held descent from Glang dar ma, were in the west at Mnga ris and held that small principality. During this period, pandits from the eastern part of India, Dharmapala and the others called the three Palas, went to

Mnga' ris in the west. The Zhang Zhung Rgyal ba'i shes rab took the vow from these. Similarly, the transmission of the Pratimokhsa vow spread from a pandit named Sakyasri who had come to Tibet, and the spread of the Vinaya of the noble doctrine down from these into Dbus and Gtsang is called "the recovery of the embers of the doctrine from the west". Thus, the transmissions of the Pratimokhsa vow from the east through the great Lama Dgongs pa rab gsal is called the eastern lineage of the Vinaya vow, and the transmission of the Pratimokhsa vow from the west through the Zhang Zhung Rgyal ba'i shes rab together with the pandit Sakyasri is called the western lineage of the Vinaya vow.

Not only that, the guru-king, Ye shes 'od, sent about twenty Tibetan children to India to study for the purpose of furthering the teaching. With the exception of three, the Lotsaba Rin chen bzang po, Lo chung, and Rnogs legs pa'i shes rab, the others died of the unsuitable conditions and were unable to return. These three completed their studies in India, and, having returned to Tibet, translated many scriptures and commentaries. In particular, the great translator Rin chen bzang po translated many scriptures and commentaries of the Mantrayana of the Mahayana. The tantras translated from this point are called the "new tantras", and the tantras translated in the time of the chief 'grandfathers', the former three pious kings, are called the "old tantras".

A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions of the on Six.

व्राम्भावतात्तिः क्रमान्त्राम्भानाना तत् भवाववा य्र क्रिक्तान्त्र वार्ष्ट्र त्यात्र वर क्रम क्रमा कर क्रमा कर あいれ、あ、あ、あ、からかいないとうというのからかいか、からからない म्र्यालयारियहर् あいて、くれいれてあるので、カカス・う、ま、そうて、ると、か、うつの र्दिनाम्बर्ने अवमात्म् अर्थान्य द्वास्त्रम् नाम् कुराले व इ.इ.र.च०व.नक्व.न्यू. के.च्या.च.क्या.च.क्य.च.क्या.च.क्या.च.क्या.च.क्या.च. しなるになって、あってると、みと、かが、から、みり、みて、ひかりと、 यम्बन्धिकार्यान्यान्त्रा 4.95.4.351 कीत्रत्रं स्ट्रिंट नक्ष्व स्ट्रिंग न्या नक्ष्य न्या क्ष्य न्या ने साम्य 98414175) नर्वनः ना ग्रेमत्त्रं तार्मा मित्र हेन मित्रात्ता ना ने न महामा प्रत 4.251 क्रमक्रान्त्र्वान्यक्ष्मिन्द्रम् वर्षाः जर्यान्त्र प्रत्मे भिद्धानी वट क्र्मा प्रचार विचान्त्र भेर दिन क्रा म्री चट लट न्या के दिन के क्रा लूर प्र मेर न्या वस वट न हिर स्र्व प्र मेरी मूर प्रच के दिन के क्रा मेर स्मा मान वस वट न हिर स्र न रत्ये

- र् न्व.क्रा.क्रि.क्रि.क्र्यं हिंद्यक्व.वि.च.देच.यिक.व्व.ल्ट्र्य। वाक्ष्यकाक्षे.क्ष्याचित्वातान्त्रेत्वर्वात्वेत्। दे.प्रदेशन्त्रेत्या रशक्षातात्वे क्ष्याचित्वातान्त्रेत्वर्वे क्ष्रित्व व्यक्ष्यः क्ष्येत्व
- *15 बि.सून्स्रेड्स.प.स्र) वेनस.प्रेन्स्रेड्स.प.स्रि.हे.स.स.क्रेस्य.क्रेस्य.र्स्स्य.
  - यं बरास्तर त्या। रे.ट्रिंग स्. र्रे.चए.चेर्सा सेर.चेन्या क.च.र्न्स व.च.र्ने.च.न्. से. चर्ष्य रु.कर अर.न्.च्रे. सेर.चे.च्रेस्त क.च.र्नेर वस। इ.स्.च्रे.च्ये.च्या चित्र क्या क्रिया क्या क्रिया
    - क्रीयक्ष्यां स्ट्रास्ट्रियाम् क्रीयम् क्रीयम् स्ट्रियम् स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्य स्ट्र

अविविश्चितः द्वरानासुकः वेर-व-दे-सु-सु-देर्।

- स्ट स्ट नात्त्रक्त कर केर केर में ता प्रीया ना दे ते के अक्षेत्र के से पर ने ते कि के के के के के के के के के
- *21 रेश्रेन्यन्त्रेन्यः श्रन्त्रित्याताः स्याक्ताः स्यान्त्रेनः स्वान्त्रेनः स्वान्त्रेनः स्वान्त्रेनः स्वान्ति
- २० ब्रिन्तारा इवर्नेन्द्र के किमानका माने जेवारा वी
- 23 日子であるとはらいいいののからられるとうかいろと
- ことうれていたして、ものとのからから、あると、から、あると、からなって、かられると、からなって、かられると、からなって、からいろうない。
  - ३३ ट्रेड्बाम. मैट्स.चट. एट. न्ट्री
- というないかり 一切には、より、日間になって、あり、まった」、まかい、

3) प्रवासिवाता द्वीतर की एम् क्रिया से रमनार प्रदेश मेरी

31 नद्रवाराष्ट्रकान् स्टिन्वमान्यस्यान चरामान्यराम्य

क्रिन्द्रभ्रम् श्रुनःश्रेनःश्

३५ क्रान्यर त्यंत्र र्युत्र त्या यहत्य त्या वित्र त्या वित्र त्या वित्र त्या वित्र त्या वित्र त्या वित्र त्या व

नर्भवत्यक्ताक्ताक्ताक्ताक्ताक्ताक्ताक्ताकाक्ताकाक्ताकाकाकात्वाताक्ताकाकात्वाताक्ताकाकात्वाताकात्वाताकात्वाताका

B. Take all the asterisked sentences in Exercise A, and if the sentence is plain, change it to the honorific. If the sentence is honorific, change it to the plain.

## Key to Exercise B

अर्थाः अर्थः । - याष्ट्र- (पात्रः - श्रः पात्रः ने) विया थे - पाया थे। प्रवृत्तः - त्यर्वृत्यावरः ता 日母から、一切りまらり 田敬可敬之、一部、別とり

१ नड्रम्भ-तिम्

ा नर्धरमा-नर्धन्य.

11 459.859.84. 35.95.-341

一一首也已不不可以可以可以可以可以是一些一可以可以明明的

13 क्रांसिंद्य. - क्रांसिंदिरी

15 CARY - WE']

50 82.4 - 2.82.1

21 ग्रेंस् स्था - नावरः स्था

54 84.94. - A.Qu.dal

26 日本といると、一日日子日刊

# LESSON SEVEN

र्त्रिक्षान्त्रिक्षान्त्रम् स्त्रिक्षान्त्रम् स्त्रिक्षान्त्रम् <u> बटल्ल्</u>र्न्था शुर्वाभराद्यमाद्यरमार्थः स्वित्रमार्थः स्वित्रमार्थनात्रमात्रमार्थः स्वित्रमार्थः स्वित्रमार्थः स्व रित्रेश हैट अप्टेर्ट मान्नेप विराह प्राह्मिया वर्गार मूर्वेशमाना नक्सितिसर्ज्याचीसक्चनन्त्रीता देश्वेद्दा वे.वेदना वे. र्जयम् त.च्रेर.ल.स्यम् प्रियम्भःस्या केट.इत्। अटत्, ल्र्र.त.द्री प्रियम् मुंजानुःक्रुंबी धनावःक्षान्ते संवाद्य हिसक्त्री त्वावक्षान्त्या. र्ट्यून र्ट्वा में में वर्ग भरत्न मन्या ना माने नम में परे हैं पर दे सून अशरात्मित्यर्श्वितरात्र्य्यात्मश्रात्त्र्यः चत्रवेत्राद्वर्त्त्रः वर्त्रः वर्त् क्टाक्ट्रान्त्रें सेवस रिवेदिर देशाया सेना दे अरदिर वा हैर सपार्टा यक्तरः भता कुरातार्थका कुर्म् वर्षात्ववरातार्था वर्षारात्वरभवारात्रा पर्यारतियात् मूर्यासक्षेत्र स्थानक्षेत्र स्थान्य न्यान्य मार्था स्थान वस्यानित्तित्त्रम्यस्यादाद्वः। सञ्चादा त्रारत्त्वित्तरे वदः कवः रेत्रे स्त्र त। धनार्धरतः सुर्धस्य सुर्धाने लिला ही सु क्या कुरत्य धना सता रेगा यासरामान्द्रकेटामानेरामानेरित्रित्र्राचारात्रकामान्द्रविद्रितेर् र्.लर.ध्रेर.अ.बर.ल.वी न्रेटियासर.इतास. श्रीयक्षेत्रातार्रे क्षितातासर. डुट.चड्रमासी.ही.. यमान्यस्टार्चनारा छात्र राष्ट्रद्रत्यस्व पर्यः प्रे.च. र्वक्षवानवर्त्तामवाकता क्रविक्षाक्षान्तानामान्त्रान्तान्त्रम् यावर है। रेष्ठ प्रेयामा एड्वे.क्ट्र हैं के ता है में ही जूर पारेरी रेष्टेश.

लवार्ट्य वासर्हित्वराभागाः विराधरान्तराहेर्न्द्रान्तराहेन्द्रान्तराहेन्द्र मिल्ट्यार्ता गुमर स्नामाहित अति स्नामा अवता नार्य के न मुद्राला की क्रम. मि. प्राचित्र ने प्राचित्र वर्ष वर्ष । दे लट हो त्रे रे रे रे रे रे रायर इनाया क्रीस्तर्राक्षक वर्त्तर मार्थिर वावसा वि. य अव रेट हि एर्से पास्त्रासा स ब्र्मश्रायाः भेरताः । सर्वर्तित्वयश्राप्ते सुवयाक्षेत्रायाः । ドムとが、ちんない、M. かぞう、とうして、ちばられば、ままして、して、して、して、して、 री.ह्यात.क्षेत्र, र्वेश्न्र्रिश्चर्रात्रेश्चर्यात्रेश्चर्याः मेवराष्ट्रात्रास्य श्री.क्ष्याः शर्यात्रीरमान्ता हेप्तरमान्त्राया सम्मन्त्राया स्वानात्राया र्राभरत् भेवत्रत्त्रेयात्रम्मित्र अही अवर्भरित्यात्रियार्वे नेवर् इन.क्र्में अट्त्याप्र. टे. र्रमाता प्रान्त्री मार्य अहरे प्रदे वा अहर आका ताः अहरितादता देवविवास्त्रिताद्वा इक्षामी हेन्द्र। वे अपा अम्बेन्स कुमा ग्रीट से पा से व की में या अप प्रता है जिया है। या माना र स्वामा ग्री क्या माना ता र्युट्। ट्रेट्रेशलस्यम्बर्ड्यम्।क्षेट्नप्रेत्रम् स्रुट्रे रेष्ट्र-स्मिन्ना प्रदेश हेना प्रयूप प्रत्य प्रयूप पार हें प्राय प्रयाचेता नगरन्त्र-तान्न-तार्न-तिनान्त्र-त्रीताना-तर्मानेना-नेना र्.जा.चट्रयानुना.ग्री.धना.या.बुना.लूट्ना.नुरी देवाना.तु.च्याप्त.चर्चेट्रट. मिटलातानगरनिक्तान्तान्तान्तान्ता है। ही २०००व ह्या प्राचित्रा राष्ट्रा अर्दा ता ते हुन ही ही से सी मिन की मेर ता हरता वित्य से त्या थे। त्रक्ष्वत्रम्त्यस्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्राः अन्तर्त्त्रम्व। केल्यान्यस्त् र्षित्रमार परमा द्वार परि ता स्वामा राष्ट्रमा द्वारा अर र्यमाया मा

त्रितिक्र ज्यमायमायमारायात्र । येन द्वेषातास्यमायात्रः अर्केट्रियात्रात्र्यक्षात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्या वस्त्रभात्ति। सेत् वस्त्रम् वस्त्रम् वस्त्रम् स्रा देवेन्त्रम् तः रैकामान्,के. इंस्क्रामा प्रमानुका नविव निक्र निर्ध मिनामा मुका ने पा देशा देशा त्त्राह्मक्रित्त्रं राया अवह चरावेटा अट अवसार्य विट्रं विरा म् निर्देश न्त्रास्यात्रसामात्रम् क्रियाने अरान् त्रमार् श्रेशने मुनात्मस्यास्य म् निर्दर्शनान्ति । नात् निर्दर्शन्ति । नात् निर्दर्शन्ति । वेदान्यरेअकात्त्रस्त्र्वात्त्रवा येटकात्र्यत्तित्त्र्रेरत्त्र्येत् निधन। श्रीनः अस्तिः क्र्यान्त्राः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः प्रभारेशकात्म्यानात्रिक्र्याताक्ष्यात्रिक्ताक्ष्यात्रम् かるとうかいておっているとれていれるとうのは、これのいろうろうし नगरनक्रीता भेरा देवासत्त्रगर प्रतिरितास वर नास्त्र में ग्रेस नगरनक्ट्रिटर। एर्चेनात्त्रगरन्क्ट्री एर्च्रेस्ट्रियारनक्ट्री देग प्रदर्गार न्कृत स्मामानगर नकृत के नही कुर नकुत केर ने र ने स्मिल्य्याम् अध्यात्रे के त्रे १००३० स्मिल्युक्ता यह त्रिक्षा स्मिल्युक्ता के स्मिल्युक्ता समिल्युक्ता समिल् अक्रमानिकार्त्तित्वर्ति। अस्तिन्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रा प्रास्त्रम् अप्रयास्य मुन्ति । अप्रयास्य मुन्ते । प्रविद् रे भाराप्तार

द्यु ने से मारा देनीय न विया नित्र ता भारत है। देनीय न में नित्र के देना

ह्यासा पर्या अष्ट में रेंट वसाह्यात क्वीत्र क्सा ही रेटा छिर

त्यार्धन्यरम्भातार्ट्रन्त्याः भीत्यमात्तान्त्राः सीत्यमासूषाः याद्याताः ।
इसार्प्यट्रन्द्र्यस्याः । ताः सान्नीः सीत्यमान् । सीत्यमासूषाः याद्याः याः ।
क्राट्रः । द्रम् ह्र्ट्र्याच्यास्याः स्वायाः स्वायाः । त्रायाः सिवायः प्रह्र्यः ।
यास्त्रः प्रम् द्रम् त्रायाः सिवायः स्वायाः स्वायाः । द्रायस्य स्वायः स्वायः ।
याद्रायं म् प्रमायः सिवादः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः सिवादः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः स्वायः ।
स्वायः ।
स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वयः स

75:031 नगत्मद्रमा नेर्ने के नर्मिक नेर्ने से नर्मे ने के नर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे न निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे ने निर्मे निर्मे निर्मे ने निर्मे निर् इ.सॅ.नर्भे अ.में. ट्वं इअस.इट.अ.पिस.टा.मैत.र्थं अर्थं अ.में अ.में अ.में र्याम्यावसावसावसार्वास्यान्त्रास्यान्यान्तावर्तात्राम्यान्यान्या इत्याना ही पान ही नावर का कट हर हिना नूर प्राधित नुर त अभया है। लवन्द्रतिन्त्रित्रद्धन्ताम् । स्त्रित्रम् निन्ति । स्त्रित्रम् निन्ति । स्त्रित् म्। स्वास्त्रम् म् म् नार्यः त्रास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् प्रेर्यक्षेत्रअत्प्रेत्वक्ष्यत्ता वि.वि.ध्रेवत्वक्ष्यप्तयामे देट्टेट इ्च. प्रचासान्तर, प्रेसान्त नायुका हीता विसा निया स्वासन्ता नाते हैं। कूता स्त्रात्रारमारमारम् द्रान्त्रिक्षान्त्रिक्षान्त्रिमारमान्यान्त्रात्रात्रात्रात्र स्रिक्रा में अक्रेन स्थित अस्त्रामा त्रामा पर्मे में स्थित है में स्थित तर्वेव:येन:यम्यम् अर्द्न्य। देते:स्मान्यःतर्वेव:स्मात्त्रन्तः पद्मारातात्वात्वात्वमाराचेत् देखनगत्नात्वात्वात्वात्वात्

च्यार चरिन सन्मानम् अत्तर सुर्यु स्वार् । विद्रमान स्वार स

## LESSON SEVEN

#### VOCABULARY

हुद अ	P.N. of a sect
N.B.	P.N. of a sect
नगार'नहुर	P.N. of a sect
नगर निर्मस	P.N. of a sect
<u>E</u> 'a='	P.N. of a sect
À:35'	P.N. of a sect
नुःद्वानाः	P.N. of a sect
नार्मश्रास्त्र	practical in- structions; precepts
あて、あて、	only
カタナダ.	P.N. of a sect
ह्रचारा खर.	P.N. of a sect
स्त्रान्त्रद	P.N. of a sect
र्ने गुर	P.N. of a sect
हेनासन	P.N. of a sect
हैं दस्य	supernormal psychic power
र्वेन्यान्य मान्य	unobstructed
<b>3</b> 9.9.	accomplishment, attainment
ल.शक्ते.	wonder; miracu- lous feat

to ripen, to mature P.N. of a region P.N. of a district in Bsam Yas one having good fortune convert; trainee treasure to bury, to hide activity (H) without limit, illimitable Dharmakirti (P.N.) Vimalamitra (P.N.) in, within P.N. of a sect P.N. of a sect nickname of P.N. of a person time, occasion Naropa (P.N.)

Tilopa (P.N.) back from The Six Doctrines nickname of ब्रेशन द्वार incomparable epithet epithet back and forth Nepal Maitri pa (P.N.) 10,000 BIP 'E dream magical illusion initiation P.N. of a sect P.N. of a sect of a person het of a P.N. of a person Sridharmapala

adept Virupa (P.N.) Gayadhara (P.N.) title of a work epithet of a person epithet of a person Vikramasīla (an Indian monastery) Atīša special, particular Bodhimarga-pradipa P.N. of a person of a person to purify; to P.N. of a place P.N. of a person P.N. of a person P.N. of a sect

### EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

कुर इस

 small sorts of; minor kinds of; small stuff

follower, adherent (i.e., of a philosophical or religious system)

to spread everywhere

the profound doctrine

the twenty-five, king and subjects

Prajnaparamita

son of one's mind or thought; disciple

stages or steps of a (the) path

the five great former Sakyas

all, complete, entire

without error or mistake

to become contaminated

threefold examination

religious center or community

NOTES

- "denominational systems" or "sects".

  It is to be noted that the Tibetan religious sects unlike their western counterparts do not have their genesis in schismatic or splinter groups separating from a parent body by way of disagreement on matters of doctrine. They represent rather the different facets of Indian Buddhist tradition mastered by a given individual, their founder, and subsequently transmitted by lines of disciples in Tibet. These lines of transmission are of interest mainly to monks, scholars, etc. and Tibetan laymen at large do not identify themselves as members of a particular sect or denominational system.
- 3. বুদ্দান Here the first four ক্ষান্ত্ৰা or denominational systems are widely represented today. The last three are mainly of historical importance.
- "(religious) precepts", the Sanskrit upadesa, simply signifies religious instruction in general.

  However, in usage its meaning tends at times to overlap with a cognate expression, جرح حص

also signifies religious instruction in general but is often taken to mean more or less brief textual or oral instructions of important acaryas the aim of which is predominately pedagogical, viz., to reformulate a vast body of doctrine through comparatively few leading principles or concepts in order to make it more readily accessible to the understanding and practice of beginners or to epitomize it for the review of the more advanced. Such precepts in the latter sense often reflect the individual point of departure of their formulator.

- - tinction to "the tantra side" ( とういうで ).

    The former is the teaching of the Paramitayana ( マズルラ・ ) the latter the teaching of the Mantrayana ( マスマランランランコーロ ). These two systems are regarded by Tibetan scholarship as the two path systems of the Mahayana.
- 7. ERTEN 3 "the twenty-five, king and subjects", i.e., the king himself, and one of his queens, several of the "seven probationers", several lotsabas, some of his ministers, etc.
- 8. AN 33' "one possessing the good fortune", i.e., the

- good fortune to come into contact with Buddhist teaching.
- 9. 司气送河 "the profound doctrine" signifies specifically the Mahāyāna theory of emptiness ( ) 方句:
- 10. 755 77 77 77 9 "precept transmissions" another way of classification as for the subjects and practices covered by the Six Doctrines or Yogas of Naropa.
- 11. है हैं "the divine doctor" a common epithet for the physician in Tibet, ब्राह्म ने
- 12. [3937] ) "an adept" signifies in general a person who has obtained paranormal knowledge or powers, etc. through the cultivation of any of the paths, Buddhist or non-Buddhist. In particular it signifies the adepts of the Mantrayana as exemplified by the 84 tantric adepts of India such as the adept Virupa.
- 13. সম্প্রের্ম শৃষ্ট্রেম বর্র "the sevenfold Bka'gdams deities and doctrine". The doctrine is the "three baskets" of the Buddhist scripture, ( ই'ইর্ন্স্ন
  - ), and the four deities are the Buddha Sakyamuni, the goddess Tara, a form of Avalokitesvara called Lokesvara, and Bhairavacala.
- 14. 555 75 "threefold examination". The term
  "threefold examination" stems from the statement of the Buddha,
  "Let monks and scholars accept what I say not out of veneration

for me, but after testing it well like gold by burning, cutting, and rubbing." This is discussed at some length in Lesson 10.

#### TRANSLATION

- I. Once the doctrine had spread in Tibet, how did the different demoninational systems come about?
- Generally speaking, quite a few denominational systems arose G. by way of their being designated by names, for instance, Rnying ma pa, Sa skya pa, Bka' brgyud pa, and Bka' gdams pa the four better known, and in addition there are many minor sorts of systems, the Jo nang pa, Zhi byed pa, Bu lugs pa, etc. As for these systems, - some are designated by name by way of a time or an area, others by way of (their practice) instructions or a teacher. Excepting this, their is nothing definite in distinguishing them by way of just their theories which are like the four philosophical systems of Indian Buddhism as regards their basic viewpoint and tenets. Also, for instance, the Rnying ma pa and the Gsar ma pa are classified by way of time, the Bka' gdams pa and Bka' brgyud pa, and Rdzogs chen pa, and Phyag chen pa by way of their practise-instructions, the Sa skya pa and the 'Bri gung pa and Stag lung pa, which are within the Bka' brgyud pa, and others are classified by way of an area.
- I. How does one distinguish the Gsar ma and the Rnying ma?
- Once the way in which the teaching of the tantras spread in G. Tibet has been distinguished as old and new, -scriptures and commentaries on the tantras were translated during the time of the three early pious kings up to the time of the Lotsaba Rin chen bzang bo, and these were spread by the great tantric teachers of their time, and the followers of their way are called the Rnying ma pa. Therefore, this distinction of old and new, not being made according to the way in which the doctrine on the sutra side spread in Tibet, is made principally by way of the manner of the spreading of the tantric doctrine. The main occasion for the appearance of the system of the old tantras was in the time of the pious king Khri srong, for in the year 776 of the western calendar, the great tantric master Padmasambhava, who was without impediment in his capacity and power to work wonders, came to Tibet, and he ripened the people of Tipet at first through faith by way of showing many wonderful feats of magic as a sign of his having obtained a great accomplishment. Afterwards at Sam yes Mchim bu, etc., he taught many of the Manayana doctrines of the tantras, both the common and the uncommon (i.e., to the path of the Prajnaparamita), and, having ripened many fortunate converts, the twentyfive, king and subjects, etc. he brought them to emancipation. Not

only that, he performed activity without limit, burying as treasure many profound doctrines for the sake of converts yet to come, etc., and similarly, the masters Dharmakirti, Vimalamitra, and others taught the doctrines of the mantrayana to various fortunate disciples, and from these the system of the old tantras became widespread. The followers of their system are called the Rnying ma pa.

- I. Of what kind is the system of the Bka' brgyud pa?
- Within this there are two varieties. The two are called the G. Dwags po Bka' brgyud pa and the Shangs pa Bka' brgyud pa. Chos Kyi blo gros, called Marpa the translator - born in the year 1012 of the western calendar, - went several times to India and had recourse to many Gurus, the pandit Naropa and others. He heard many instructions on the four tantric "precept transmissions" etc. from Tilopa, and, upon his return to Tibet, he translated many scriptures and commentaries on the sutras and tantras, the Prajnaparamita, the Guhyasamaja, etc. Doing principally the mahayana tantras, the instructions of the mahamudra, the six yogas (of Naropa), etc., he extended greatly the doctrine by way of teaching and practice. His instructions, the system transmitted successively through the chief son of his thought, the venerable Mi la ras pa, and the incomparable Dwags po lha rje is called the system of the Dwags po Bka' brgyud pa. Also, the accomplished scholar, Khyung po went back and forth many times to India and Nepal, and, having had recourse to about 150 Indian and Nepalese Gurus, Maitri pa and others, he heard many teachings. He established a monastery in the area called Shangs and taught illimitable mahayana doctrines, (i.e.) the initiation of the dream state illusory body, the stages of the magical path, etc. to many tens of thousands of disciples. The followers of the system transmitted from him are called the Shangs pa Bka' brgyud pa. Within the Dwags po Bka' brgyud pa, there are four major Bka' brgyud (subsects), the Ka rma Bka' brgyud, the 'Brug pa Bka' brgyud, the 'Bri gung Bka' brgyud, and the Stag lung Bka' brgyud. Similarly. there are eight minor(subsects).

As for the Sa skya sect, - 'Khon dkon mchog rgyal po, who was born in the year1042 of the western calendar, had recourse to many Gurus (who were) accomplished scholars, 'Brog mi Lotsaba, 'gos khug pa lhas btsas, Rin chen mchog, and others. The monastery which he founded on the "white earth" side of Dbon po hill received the name of Sa skya monastery. He heard the general mahayana doctrine from 'Brog mi and in particular the new mahayana tantras of which he made the chief the lam

bras which was transmitted from the Indian master Sridharmapala, the (other) name of the adept Virupa, and the master Sayadhara, and by way of the teaching and practice of these he extended the doctrine; and the followers of the system transmitted from him through the five great former Sa skyas and through Ngor pa, Rdsong pa, and others are called the Saskya pa.

- I. Are the systems called Bka' gdams pa and Dge lugs pa the same?
- G. As for the Bka' gdams pa - the great master Atisa of Vikramasila in India came to Tibet in the year 1042 of the western calendar. Abridging all the subjects of the Buddha's teaching, the three baskets, into the path stages of three (kinds) of religious individuals, he composed the Bodhipatha-pradipa, (his) special instructions on the way of putting these into practice, a book without error and (making) it easy to practice all the essentials of the path of the sutras and tantras. By way of teaching and practice, the three Bka' gdams brothers held and spread the profound instructions which have the sevenfold Bka' gdams deities and doctrine, (i.e.) the father doctrine taught (by Atisa) at the request of the chief sons of his thought, the father 'Brom ston rgyal ba'i 'byung gnas, and the son doctrine taught at the request of the sons, both Khu ston brtson 'grus gyu drung and Rngogs legs pa'i shes rab, etc. The followers of their system are called the Bka' gdams pa.

Here, there is also a division into both an early and a new Bka' gdams. The Bka' gdams pas up to the lord, the great Tsong kha pa, - born in the year 1357 of the western calendar, - are called the early Bka' gdams. Subsequently, the lord Tsong kha pa held principally to the good system of the early Bka' gdams. Through reason and scripture (purified) by a threefold examination he made a consummate scrutiny of the contaminated and degenerate (condition of) the system of the Lord (Atisa) and the Bka' gdams pas in particular, and of the Buddhist teaching in general and again spread the pure system of the Bka' gdams pa and made it extensive. He founded a great religious center, the monastery on the hill of Dga' ldan. The followers of the system transmitted through the principal sons of his thought, Rgyal tshab dar ma rin chen, Mkhas grub dge legs dpal bzang, and the Lord dge 'dun grub pa, and others are called the new Bka' gdams pa or Ri bo dge lugs pa.

#### EXERCISES

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Seven.
- र् प्राम्बर्धि क्रमास्मारामा स्राम्बर्धि ।
- 2 कॅसलिनामन्द्रेतिवत्वसन्त्रनामन्त्रः क्रान्त्रं नारेनारेने
- ३ क्रातिमान्नु एर्ट्र केट्ल ने नार्त्य मान्य स्थानित क्रात्य हेट्ल हरा
- 4 र्द्धतः स्ट्रान्यस्य स्ट्राह्मान्यस्य द्वारा
- २ नमर समामार्थेट अप सून रर्त्व के नार्य ने मिल मामवर ने ने
- 2. मुरातिम्बर्धान्तर्भात्वर्भात्वर्भाः १ श्रीन्द्वराद्वराद्धाः स्वर्धाः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर
- ग नमात्रवर्ष्ट्रन्याः नेरानान्त्रेनान्त्र
- द्रा द्रा
- ३ स्वरक्षःशायत्राराचकुरायाचेरायान्तानात्त्रवातान्त्रम्
- 10 रिवासान् नगरानक्तिता पान्यत्वाम् मार्क्षेत्र प्रतानिका
- 11 大田子の日本の一部八八日日の大田日子
- 12 प्रत्वर्य्वः मक्ष्यः क्रियः दे वि व दे द्याः क्रिया वर क्रियं वर वर वर
- ा अक्षित्मभासवस्त्रेरत्नेत्वत्त्रक्ष्यं कुर्त्यूर्त्व
- लवंचन। म श्रीपृष्ट्रम्पियम्, रे.चानर क्रियम् यानर श्रीर वा रेपु क्रम पिया
- 12 प्रवानगारानान्यसायित्यस्वतिरात्रेत्रात्रात्रात्रात्रात्रा
- 16 नगरन्तरम्भायास्य सम्तु संभारानाः ने ने ने ने
- 17 नमातः नाद असामानानः हिन्दानो । खन्दान् रे नादः तह इता से तहेन हो। वनातः नाद असामानानः हिन्दानो । खन्दान् रे नादः तह इता से तहेन हो।

- 1) प्रारम्प्रसन्त्रान्त्र्न्त्रम् त्याचात्रान्त्रम् । त्रारम् । त
- ३० ८म.पियामानर्टस्यानानियानुतान्त्री

New Honorifics in Lesson Seven.

व्रात्मिक्यः - मुलन्त्रवरः सिनाका। 11 श्रेट.ट्.-अर्थ्यंद्र। व्यासाता-व्यासा-वावटाचा

# LESSON EIGHT

क्रा निर्मारमान्यसायर नम्भन्यरे निर्मा देवः का. मेल वितार्वर वेराम नर प्रदेशको खेनका यानेता प्टर्टरी. ज्या क्षा की सूर अर्र्य देश ती विवी शटरर की सरहत. तान्त्रेक्याः ह्यान्याः क्याः तत्त्राः नत्त्रेवानाः स्रन्त्याः वर्षान्यः रामान्द्र। मूर्वमाल् क्वार्वक्षवानवर्त्तामान्यान्त्रान्तान्त्र वाक्ट्रास्त्रीयात्री,रेर.पुट्क्यातर.किर.क्ट्रा प्रवाधत्वसावसाप्त्रीयात. अ.भूभ.त.के.अक्टी.टे.ग्रम.वम.इयाम.182.टे.य.सूर.त.८ट.। क्रिक्स.त्य. इत्रमाताभूमाताक्रिमक्वादिमक्षात्माताक्रिमक्षाताक्ष्या नम्बत्तारा सिनास देव प्रश्चन ए हिन से क्रिया परे ते ता प्रशान दे ने ना ना अर्. द्वर्यम्, में यावर रूवे प्रास्त्र ताक्यामा वसा छे असा में प्रविश्व सामा विविश्व . (१.८) व.त्.व.त्.व. देशांका.क्ट. ज्यामा.त. एचाए देगा वस केट. ग्री.क्ट्रा.ट्व.व्. ता.लूट्राधितात्रमा.धे.रटत्त्रवृष्ट्रमार्ट्यात्रात्मक्ष्वे.त्.भर.त्.त्रेमा.थेटा। वर. या स्वासाराप्तानेदासद्यासातातस्यानात्वसावसाकतात्वा पानदः नार कुरायास्त्रम् कुराद्वासर दे तराया परा लट. म्यार असास्य द्वीत्वर ते वर नित्र प्राप्त वर्ष हो वर्षेत्र प्राप्त वर्ष हो वर्षेत्र प्राप्त वर्ष हो वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र प्राप्त वर्ष हो वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र प्राप्त वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र प्राप्त वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र प्राप्त वर्षेत्र वरेत्य वर्षेत्र वरेत्र वर्षेत्र वरेत्र वरेते वरे नःस्यमाविष्यात्रित्तर्दित्तित्तेत्त्रत्यात्त्रित्तात्त्र्या राष्ट्रस्थासारवान्त्रस्तातास्त्रातास्त्रस्यान्त्रस्त्रात्त्रस्याः दे.ज.चामर इतमा क्री. भूर निम्मानमा मेरा. इट. मुरामर रू. जिनार र. नेरी दे. ととからかられ、見て、まる、しょ、はて、しょ、とうし、は、は、は、は、は、ないか、なく、あ、 इनामाग्रीमानानवेंद्राचरकुनारकुनारवित्रावासारकार्वे केरा केरान्य

वियाल्र्यायद्वात्यद्वात्यावात्रे नामायाये तार्यायायाया व्याप्ताया व्याप्ताया विवास्त्र क्षित्रें ते हैं अपि पि वितरिष्ठ अक्षेत्र क्षेत्र की महिनाम ए से पहेंच स्ट्राम्यस्य अट्स्य्रीर वस्य विवादिव विरापति आट विवास तर्मा। ल्याना ने नार प्रमे के पार्स नक्ष्य दिन वर्ष नार प्रमा किए त्या हिर श्रीस्थात्रम् नार्ट्ट्ट्या नास्ट्रिस्ट्या देवा देवा स्ट्रा निया मिट्रिस के भवन्त्रापूर्याचे ना स्वाप्तात्राच्यात् ब्र-क्सानक्ष्विति लेब्न्द्र-विकास न्ब्साविता देश स्वस वर्षित हरे. ग्रिमानान्यन्थर्त्यं अवसारकेता ग्रुक्ते हे नामेर प्राक्षेत्र सुना ग्रुक्ति हिन्दिया किटरिका. क्रियोका लागेका पूरे पातका का का का निया त्या क्रिया क्रिया ली ना .... त्रितः नेवान्यावितः सदः श्राममः द्वीवायः यवः हो नामः त्यान्यासः त्याः वा छवात्रान्त्रित्वास्य राम्ब्रिक्ट्रिक्ट्रिका विवादिक्ता स्ट्रान्त्र साम्ब्रिका न्तिःदिनान्त्न्त्राम् नामान्त्रः ने द्वाः क्षेत्वात्वराः ग्रात्त्रवात्वात्वः तत्रार्धिसर्स्यार्ध्यार्ध्यान्त्र्यान्त्र्याः भवा रहे क्यां मुक्तान्त्र्याः विष्टान्य विष्टान्य विष्टान्य विमानमान्त्रामानमानमान्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्यान्याः गपुःष्ट्रास्ट्रेस्यान्याः वयाः यो वयाः यो वयाः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः श्रीमान्ना कें. तें तं ता तामा नेंगामा तमा ते ना तर प्रमा नाम न सर ते । न्यानिस्त्रं हेर्नादवं पर्वे वितर्नातिरः। देरास्वे ज्यानिस्ता रट्वया. म्. प्र. प्र. प्र. प्र. प्र. यो व्या स्या ह्या है। ता स्वा प्र. यी म्या का वा या या त्रियम्भवताम् । श्रीत्रामा श्रीत्रियाना वित्रित्राचित्राच्यात्राच्या とくろうからかかくしのからありをでして一番でんり……ろうかりまりましてかっ

यशंत्रानुत्राः स्यांत्रित्यूर्यातायवरः।।

र्ध्यावेश्वः प्रधात्रित्यूर्यातायवरः।।

र्ष्ट्रियोक्षः पर्वः प्रधात्राद्धः स्याः प्रवृद्धः त्याववरः प्राप्तः विकाः प्रधात्रः । अवरः प्रः ।

राष्ट्रियोः कुनः प्रिरः पर्ध्वः विदः कुः अवरः । विकाः प्रविकाः योवनः वः न्तः । अवरः प्रः ।

राष्ट्रियोः कुनः प्रिरः पर्ध्वः विदः कुः अवरः । विकाः प्रविकाः योवनः वः न्तः । अवरः प्रः ।

राष्ट्रियोः कुनः प्रिरः पर्ध्वः विदः कुः अवरः । विकाः प्रविकाः योवनः विकाः । अवरः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

राष्ट्रियोः कुनः प्रिरः पर्वेशः । विवाः पर्वेशः । विकाः प्रविकाः । अवरः । विकाः ।

यवरः प्रापः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः । विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः प्रविकाः ।

विकाः विकाः प्रविकाः ।

श्चित्रं ता के अर्थर ता के ते न्राचा त्वी राम्क्र किंट ता न्री।

अहमा में क्रिंट ता के अर्थर ता के ते न्राचा त्वी राम्क्र किंद ता न्री।

इवि सिंधा असा मिट ता के वा ता किंद कि को अर्थ की त्वाचा में त्वाचा प्रचार का स्वाधिका किंदी के कि ता किंदी की अर्थ की की कुंद कि की का किंदी के कि का किंदी के कि का किंदी की का किंदी की का किंदी के का की किंदी की का किंदी की किंदी की का किंदी के का किंदी की कि

### LESSON EIGHT

# VOCABULARY

NA. EL. esteem; liking rare to pretend invention, fabrication peculiar, eccentric competence beer woman acarya epithet of a person epithet of a crown ornament reputation, renown to be attracted .N. of a person to send; to commission

pf. of to seek; to find P.N. of a place prisoner to give MRIAT! almost to pay in exchange for; to ransom instead of bequest, will P.N. of a place escort nowadays, at present deteriorated, degenerate to report (H) whatever Tara upasaka prophecy elder, sthavira

지기하시기 Ratnākara

디디디 (H)

디디디 (H)

디디디 (H)

IN (A) (H)

Promise;

acceptance

디디디 (H)

Along with

## EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

नहन्यते नन्ना ये कु'मक्ति'र् स्माय लेग व्यामाक्यामान र्

master of the teaching "The Respectful Lord", epithet of on account of to depreciate biased contention in fact, actually essence, pith to pretend to have in memory to allege according to one's like or understanding coarse or barbarous behavior in such a way theory and practice

unable to endure (H)

to purify, to refine investigation; search to try to find (see note ) about a body's weight in gold a head's weight doctrine and living creatures life to give up in fine detail war along with this to be surprised or astonished to be fully satisfied benefit to living creatures to receive permission

#### NOTES

- 1. The signifies to state something the veracity or factualness of which is uncertain to the person designating the stating as
- 2. बार विशेष "the Gar log". It is uncertain what people in the 11th century were being called बार विशेष , except that they were invaders from the Indian side, possibly into Kashmir.
- "to try to find". The usual formation of "to try to . . . " is verb + প্রকার্ত্র or প্রকার্থন প্রত্র . However, it is to be noted that in a few instances the verb occurs between the প্রকার and the প্রত্র , and that this construction modifies the meaning, e.g.: প্রকারের আর্ত্র "to try to find" vs. প্রকারের আর্ত্র "to try to seek"; প্রকার প্রত্র "to try to seek"; প্রকার প্রত্র "to try to know"; শ্লেম্প্রকার প্রকার ভারত "to try to master" vs. প্রকার প্রকার ভারত "to try to do expertly;" etc.
- 4. 53 (etc.) "the two". In enumeration of two or more,
  Tibetan usage will often, but not necessarily, conclude the

- "a bit difficult". あれ sometimes functions as a particle limiting or diminishing the degree or amount of the word it modifies, e.g. スマスス "quite a few".
- 6. द्वे वहें व "an upāsaka", i.e. द्वें मार्चे व प्र

"Either give so year golden in bediene in het in it in it

#### TRANSLATION

- I. How did the master of the Bka' gdams pa doctrine, 'The Respectful Lord', the noble Atisa come to Tibet?
- To tell briefly about the way of his coming to Tibet Al-G. though after the destruction of the doctrine by Glang dar ma, the teaching of the Vinaya of the noble doctrine had spread and become extended in the direction of Central Tibet and Gtsang from the east through Dgongs pa rab gsal and from the west through the Lotsaba Rin chen bzang po and others; nonetheless, some on account of esteem for the Vinaya depreciated the tantras, whereas others on account of esteem for the tantras depreciated the Vinaya, and by way of this, except for the development of an assortment of biased contentions, someone who, having understood the pith of the sutras and tantras, knew them from experience, in fact, was extremely rare. Not only that. - some tantrics pretended to have the subjects of the tantras in their memory and composed many eccentric subjects of their own fabrication. Without the competence of an inner understanding, they disseminated many bad practices, action conforming to their own inclinations, (like) beer drinking, the use of women, etc., and claimed it as tantra. Also, some had come to Tibet from India, a master called Dmar po, a pandit Zham thabs sngong po, and others and they taught perverted religious practices, called "union" and "emancipation", - calling (sexual) activity with women "union" and the (ritual) murder of living creatures, who are enemies etc., "emancipation". Calling this tantra, they spread much barbarous behavior. At the time of the pure theory and practice (of the Buddhist religion's) becoming scarce in such a way, when the guru-king, Ye shes 'od, unable to endure (the situation) sought for someone in India who could purify the doctrine, he was attracted by the renown of one called the Lord Atisa, the crown ornament of the scholars of Vikramasila. He sent much gold with Rgya brtson seng (ge) and commissioned him to invite him, but he did not (succeed with the) invitation.

Afterwards, when the guru-king, Ye shes 'od, himself went to seek more gold for inviting the pandit, he was taken prisoner by the king of the Gar log, and the king of the Gar log said, "Either give up your going for refuge (in the three jewels) or give your body's weight in gold; otherwise I cannot give you up." To this the guru-king, Ye shes 'od, replied, "I will not give up my going for refuge.", and had to remain for a long while a prisoner. Byang chub 'od tried to find much

gold, at this time and at the time when there was almost (his) body's weight in gold he said to Ye shes 'od, "I have already found almost your body's weight in gold and went to ransom you, (but) the Gar log king without listening, said, "Still about a head's weight is needed." Since I have not found it yet, I shall seek it quickly and then ransom you." Upon his saying this, Ye shes 'od stated his bequest that the unstained teaching of the Buddha be furthered in Tibet; "If you have found even this much gold, even though you ransom me, there is no benefit to the doctrine or to living creatures; hence, I will (rather) give up my life. Instead of me invite the pandit from India." Afterwards he died.

Then, Byang chub 'od sent Nag tsho Lotsaba with much gold and some escort to invite 'the Respectful Lord'. When the two, Nag tsho and Rgya brtson Lotsaba who was already there, reported to 'the Respectful Lord' the need of his coming to Tibet along with various detailed news of how the doctrine was developed by the former pious kings of Tibet, how the doctrine was destroyed by Glang dar ma, how the Tibetan doctrine was degenerating these days, how the Bodhisattva gave up his life for the sake of the doctrine, etc., it was at first a bit difficult to accept. Notwithstanding, later the Lady Tara prophesied that if he went to Tibet, after meeting with an upasaka, wide benefit would come to the teaching, and finally he accepted the invitation. At that time it was difficult for the Lord's sthavira, Ratnakara, to give his permission. Finally, he consented to allow him to go for three years. Afterwards the lord went to Mnga ris and taught the doctrine to the king and his court, and in particular, he composed A Lamp to the Path of Enlightenment which abridges all the essentials of the path of the sutras and tantras. after the three years, when the lord and Nag tsho in keeping with their committment to the sthavira Akara to have to return began to leave for India, a war arose along the way, and they sent the sthavira a message for permission (to stay) with the news of their being unable to return. With that (despatch) they also sent A Lamp to the Path of Enlightenment to India, and when all the scholars of Vikramasila saw it, they were amazed. The sthavira Akara also was fully satisfied and gave also his consent allowing him to remain if there was to be such a great benefit as this to the living creatures. Later in accord with the earlier prophecy of Tara he met with 'Brom ston pa, the principal son of his thought, and with him he went to Dbus and Gtsang and gradually spread widely the Bka' gdams teaching like the rising sun.

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Eight.
  - *1 अ.५.५.७.०.१५८.५८.५५०.न्यून.स्ट्रेंब.७०.त.५८)
  - २ क्षेत्र्यामान्त्रेमात्त्रात्त्वान्त्रेन्द्र्याः क्षेत्राः कष्टिः क्षेत्राः कष्टिः क्षेत्राः कष्टिः क्षेत्राः कष्टिः क्षेत्राः कष्टिः क्षेत्राः कष्टिः क
  - नाम् प्राप्त स्त्र वास्त्र वा
  - 5 लेलेल र्रेन्सुम वर्ष्ट्रमा वर्ष्ट्रमा वर्ष्ट्रमा वर्ष्ट्रमा
  - ० भः भेभः हूर वर्ष्ट्र विवासः रूट ता वट खेव हूर कुरा वा र नाक्र
  - १ शक्षराह्र्य् ह्रेन्त्वत्वत्रत्वत्वत्त्र्वात्रराष्ट्रा
- *3 येचा.क्. प्. र्षे तका सेच.क्. . वि.टिक.ह्.त्.ह्ना. प्रश्नाम् तका न्यर विष्यायेष
- ७ ट्रेक्सका है ति .....रट. त्रं त्र्रे छे स.क. म. मर्या व्यर द्वे व स. प. नेरा
- 10天文をあるとなる、といめ、我は、からして、日本のと、日本のとうない人は
- चावटाताकार्रेटाताको ११ हु.जू.श्रट्धर्यकार्थे.जू.चार्येकात्रिवीयावेकावित्वराचित्रका.
- *12 はかいまくで、大きのと、かられているとと、から、そうできると、から、そうできると、からは、からは、かられているととがあります。
- स्या हे. यू ए. वेबाया की आड़े. याडू. यू प्रचूं अ . कूँ बतारेट वाराम. अहिता नावर

- *14 ह्र्न्स्रिं त्र्राच्य्रमार्थ्यं क्षाद्राक्ष्यं क्षाद्रमान्त्रम् क्षात्रम् क्षात्रम्
- B. Take all the asterisked srntences in Exercise A. If the sentence is plain, change it to the honorific. If the sentence is honorific, change it to the plain.

Key to Exercise B:

शहतात्वा - द्वराट्टा श्वराद्ध - द्वराट्टा श्वराद्ध - श्वराद्ध -

# **LESSON NINE**

नर्मेम् क्रियं क्रियं में प्रमान्त्रिया क्रियं प्रमान्त्रियं प्रमान्तियं प्रमानियं प्रमान्तियं प्रमा

क्रान्तर्तिवातान्त्रीतातान्त्रात्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्रमान्त्र र्रा रे.लर.रज्र वा रट.ज्.क्र.त.चर.ल.ट्रे.क.क्ट.वाय.क्रवे.ज्.लव.क्रेरश यान्त्रेत्वर्वा ८.न्दःक्त्राम्याः इवःक्ट्ःवः सूनान्द्राताः वसमाद्यः तसा श्र-विका-तर्-तः अवर-विनादर-दिवत्तर् अत्य-क्रिका-क्री-त्र-प्रवट-प्रवृत्तरः व्रेट्टाला अभार्त्रभटा अध्यक्षित्र वर्ष्ट्र देने देने नामा दे वेदारा तामा माना के दूर्व देना रिश्चामा मीता म्रेन्त्र। येटमा मुश्चिमार्स्चमाता तथा सुन्त्र त्रवारः...दिरालवात्, येवावका रकात्रेयात्र तार् क्राना का क्रान्य का का र्-निर्-निर्म देनम्नित्नातारद्द्रम्यायायन्तिन्नेन्न्याया करमान्त्रेरात्रेरी रु.एटमास्ट्रिं भिष्मातात्रसूचेत्स् रेटान्र्रेराष्ट्रमा पानम् वावसाक्षान्तिवाजनात्रेत्रान्त्रिता क्षान्तिवाजनात्रान्ता लट्रेड्रेड्रेसिलालाक्सारिक्ट्री रोर्स्साटार्ड्री लट्डाड्साटा इंड्रेस ग्रीमार्सानाम्येनति हुं माक्ष्येन्। प्रमास्यान्तातारहेनामानारद्र। तेना अह्मान्यात्वर्त्तरेश्याः ने न्याः अष्ट्रम्याः सहमान्यत्वरः निष्येश्रिं नानाना भारा अरा तरा र्यु आ केवा के ना के ना तरा दे ना अरा ने ना सरा ना

४ड्ट्रान्ताताः सूत्राः क्रियोः , त्यूकाः शेटः ड्र्याः वक्षात्रात्राक्षाः सूत्रा क्रीः ग्रायाक्षात्रेत्। दे ४ट्ट्रां लावेः इट्रा ४ व्यापः पुर्वाः ग्रायाः पूर्यः व त्याः सूत्राः व त्याः श्रायाः व त्याः । व्यापः स्थाः

यार्रर्दे नेर्ने नावनात्रस्थान्द्रस्य द्रम् मेन्न मूना प्रमासामानारे भीन लटा देक्ष्रिद्वारायमाम्बान्तित्र प्रम्भार्मेनारेना देलट्यमार्मे लयात्तर मियात् याने लव लट बना मूर्या लव कट्टी डे.क् बिट जर तर सूंभकी न्यामान्त्र। हरतान्त्रकामाः इन्याष्ट्रिवाताः प्रकृताताप्त्रम्यान्त्री र्तर.व। न्यूवि.पर.र्र. क्षेत्रका. मुनार्टनाक्रर. मुनाना न्यान्यहरूका. ग्रेट. न्द्रवायर वसा धरानि हेना सा छेरानरा देन विव सेवारगर वना ना श्र-श्र-त्रित्वर्णन्त्रम् भेत्रद्रा द्वान्यात्रम् नामान्यम् मुन्नर मर्भनम्द्र। दे.धा. मुन्ना मेन मेन मेन मिन पर्ने मिन मेन मेन इ.लट.ल्रे.ध.अंद्रेरतर.चर्यत्र.टा.ट्रा.सूत्र.च्री.अक्ट्र्य.टटा ४ व्रिट्टायश. र्नुतानित्रक्षत्राभवत्राभद्वाभक्ष्याः भवत्राभक्षत्रः भवतः भवतः भवतः भवतः भवतः भवतः भवतः । रका सैन.ग्रे.ग्रे.म.एक्र्नातर.ग्रेरतालव.श्र्रा भर्व.अश्.श्रे.एर्स्य.रर... 1241.01.632.01.61.41.92.35.1 SALA.3.21.82.01.25.834... स्रिक्षित्रयार्ष्य्याराहेत्।यहेत्।यस्मुत्र्यान्त्यस्यान्तास्म् ट्रजान्द्रियान्त्री यान्त्र्रत्वस्यी श्रीत्रत्व्वः श्रीत्राचामात्मा अर्वः अबूध्देश्वेष्ट्रात्त्रिक्यात्मन्यविवाचेत्र क्यानिस्यत्यत्यत् विवा भर्वामा मुत्राचित्र के ति मार् में वास्त्र में मार् में मार किया पर के प श्रीन्त्रे र्र्त्ने क्षा विभया अस्य स्ट्रिया भीता केरा ने नित्रे वे । त्रुनासन्तर्भान्त्रा मेनायसमान्त्रात्रम्। यन्तर्भान्त्रा प्रमुचात्मास्य द्वाद्वाद्वाद्वाद्वाद्वातास्य स्थान्य स विते नावमार्क्षाकेमायते से वमाराट श्रुट होता ने मायमा सुद्रम्या

१८। रे.च.वर.वषवे.वरूभाद्मव.एरमा.ग्रेमारिक्र.वर्षे.क्.च्.क्.पामा.व्रि.वर.लर। र्रित्वं क्षार्वं स्थान्यां स्थापर्षा स्थापर्षे सरमाम् साम्याना देवे नक्षापर क्षेत्रा ।... विसान्यान्देशनाः तिर्मराना समाधराते स्टारेन्निन ते तिर्वे नार्ये नार्ये ना इनमानस्यान्त्रन्ते। जूर्यान्त्री।

あられてて、そう、あいからずくくなっていること、かられていることでう。 त. फ. ठिमा क्या देना प्रिंद्र ता ता मार्चे पा की लूर व। सूर्व ता मार मार की मार्च मा रवीट. जुने अ के सू. ह. चंत्रा नके र केंद्र नर ह्या न कंट एते ट.क. वर्ग मी आ की जा थ पा.चार्डर-वधवा.चन्न.चठ.वीमा.ग्री.कूम्,अवध.लमा.ना.धुवा.वर्षेट्मा.ना.ट्यूश. अरेरिक्करन्त्राच्या अवराष्ट्रवेत्यार् ह्याप्तियाः अधियायाः क्रुयाः सरमाचिताः गुनगर्ने व्यामाराद्रम्यारम् त्र्रात्रम् । त्र्रात्रम्यारम् । यूप इराक्रवे.त्.क्र्यावयात्वासान्त्रीत्वध्यात्वराच्यात्वरात्त्रीयत्वराक्ष्यं त्रमा रत्यामा विभम्भे विद्यात प्रायमा की द्र्यू मुन्मा पास्त्यमाना नावनात्मानान्तरास्त्रेन्तित्ते प्रस्तान्तराद्धाः स्त्रान्तरास्त्रान्तरास्त्रान्तरास्त्रान्तरा न्रर्देन थराही पा. म्रा. पार्याप्तिया न्यू मी अक्सा पर्ता के मार्टर है। बर्गा न्या मार्टर है। बर्गा न्या मार्टर वसामिनारान्त्रान्त्री नवसाक्तान्त्रान्त्र में वादि क्रां भारत्य क्रिं ताशक्त मत्यमा हर देवालाता है। या अत्यावदार्य व दि है।

भूवर्त्वर्तिष्ट्रात्या भैगन्त्रम् अमारद्रात्रमा मुद्रमा मूद्रारा ने र्श्यादा दे ने नि में ना ने में वादा का का का की वा ने की

र्र्रेर्ड्र्या इ.प्रचा मेंक्यून्स.ल्रेर्न्र्रामर्त्रामर्त्राचना नेना पेता मेंचिनारा... ख्या. सर. अ. अ. प्राचा प्रदेश प्रस्ता संस्था सामी प्रति न सार्टी । या अर्चा वा संस्था स त्यमार्त्रअवर्त्त्यविन्तिः व्यातामन्त्रे म्त्रवास्यान्त्रात्ते क्रम वसार्धितसाराष्ट्र.श्रेवत्रात्म्वात्वात्रात्म्वा द्यराश्चराश्चरात्रात्मात्मा त्रिक्षात्त्रित्ते द्रिविवर्ष्यायादेवे स्वर्तातास्त्रायायात्रित्या मि.अर.नाप्र.बूर.मी.अष्ट्यालवयार्थरसी रत्राची पहेंचा. हेव.व.यासीर. र्र्र्रियातास्त्रामाराहे वेरानाववा वयमा मुवाया र्रा त्रित्। ग्रे.पार्श्वमाराष्ट्राप्तिरत्वेत्राप्त्रासारात्त्र्वासार्भ्यासार्भ्यासार् र्ये वेर्ने वेर् तर्मा आणेव पर र्र ता ह्ना हा र्ये प्रते वेर की अर्देन ही न्ता ब्रायन्त्रेत्रत्यान्यन्यन्यत्यत्यात्रान्त्रेयस्याः मुल्याः मुल्यान्त्रान्ता दे वे.एहेना हेव व ना देश परि स्नेना सर् प्रत्नेना सं से स्था पर है। ता कु रट.श्रम् म्यास्त्रम् अयायायायायात् । यद्नाया स्वर्माया स्वर्माया स्वर् निर्मित्रर्रात्रे । में र्नार्मा अवसाक्ष्मार्ने । यूर्यास्मार्मेन सर्मे नम्मान्तात्वर्त्वम् म्यामान्त् मान्त्नाम् मान्त्ना भन्ना मेन्त्रा सर्धिशान्त्र, स्वामान्त्र, स्वामान्त्र, स्वामान् ने न्यत्वे स्माना ने ने न्या प्रह्मा राते अर्द्धवक द्वास्तामा नारे देन बेर बेर वा वर को न्या त्या त्या त्या र्रेन्ची:नवर्नारं भरः भेरान्ति स्रेन्स परे प्राची केवार् ने वर्ष देन्ची ... नवर.क्र.नप्र.क्र.न्द्र.पुर.ग्रेस.पर्वास.नर.ग्रेर.ग्रेस्रा क्र.हे.का.... तर्वक्र प्रत्वे तपु वन्त्र क्रम गुनि न के के वे ते स्वाप में न प्रति क्रम परिक्र नःसदःकःर्वदर्यन्यनाताल्यन्। गवना स्वमाके तर्ते नरे ही द के स्वास्ताया अद रेशा के दा अपनार्या ...

# LESSON NINE

# VOCABULARY

अवर-विना	final perfect
द्रभारा सुता	object of meditation; object of awareness
नें देश	sequence
म्र्रू	numeration, number
देशक्ष.	ascertainment
र्भेट.क्रम.	confidence
5A1.	maimed
हुन: नुन:	crag
रहेवाह्य.	to climb
सहयात.	finger
सब्द दें	high
F	summit, peak
वेन्स	impediment, obstacle, hindrance
नर्देव मर	prison
द्वेनामः	iron
ब्रेन	chain
वर्षाः तकदः । १: मक्टन	to bind, to tie
39	cloud

शु.व. र्येचाय.त.	Candrakirti
र्मानर्सेम्सः	arhant (Lit. a slayer of the enemy)
夏.石.	to move (v.); motion (n.)
स ३ स 'दार 'दाव <i>च</i> । ता.	transic absorb- tion (n.); to be absorbed in trance (v.)
द्वन्य न स्ट्रायः नामनः	to goad (H)
नुर्नेश सेन् न	without purpose
₹4.6£4.	following
ले.लॅ.	lazy
त्रेव'च	foolish, stupid
नितःस्ताः द्वाराज्यः नितःस्ताः	Asvagho sa
है सन्दर्भः	Jataka
नाने सुना	ignorance
सुब्नः	darkness
नलुःसरः	1amp
<b>12</b> - 1	to flash; to flame; to illuminate
<b>न्हिन्द्य</b>	shape
A.81541	color

मूर्टी	thief
मुक्यें	to steal
र्नेन	wealth
सुव्यःसः	thief
ह्यानः	robber, bandit
न्द्रेशः	to cherish
म्नायः दे	friend
म्स.	position
र्के र	poor

<i>कु</i> .थ.झ.	almost
सर्वाः सर्वाः	to pretend
यन पर्नास	to assist
सर्दे न क	weapon
<b>3</b> 5	comfort, ease
न्मल'नता	difficulty
UKAN.	to be reluctant about

# EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

र्म न म म में म न म म

म् त्रांत्र में त्र में त्रांत्र में त्र में त्रांत्र में त्र में त्रांत्र में त्र में त्रांत्र में त्र में त्रांत्र में त्र में त्रांत्र में त्रांत

learning, reflection, and meditation

all three

to fix the thought correctly

a true object, an ultimately real object; the ultimately real

a great yogin

mutilated arms or hands or fingers

to be a great yogin

to do meditation

whichever, no matter which

whatever one thinks about (of) ...

without distinction; indifferently the activity of cultivating and avoiding without activity, inactivity omniscience, all-knowledge future life in this life, the present life body the 10 non-virtues "the arising of all", i.e. the second of the four truths, the cause of misery to see, to perceive the four Noble Truths great river to be satisfied sense consciousnesses mental consciousness to wake up (trans.), to arouse meaning; meaning to be understood to take as a basis to practice (H) as well as one can an important point the four elements

material stuff

destitute

unacquainted with

all the time, always

cultivation and elimination

happiness and ease
to aim at, to aspire to, to
strive for
difficulties, pains
expense

the religious and the secular; religion and politics

from a teacher who had there in his mercey. Subsequently, were

NOTES

र्भावसम्म स्मानम् - "learning, reflection, and meditation". This expression is an abreviated form of रूसाना त्रामात्र त्राचित वितान्ता "the understanding which arises from learning", त्रमात्र वर्षेत्र द्रम "the understanding which arises from reflection", and त्वृद्यते भेरान्यः "the understanding which arises from meditation". In both Buddhist and Upanisadic traditions this triad is of cardinal importance in the development of a direct or gnostic type understanding of their respective views of the ultimately real. AZN'EL means literally, as a verb, "to hear", and as a noun, "hearing", and is a quite literal rendering into Tibetan of the Sanskrit 'sruti "hearing". In ancient India, before the writing down of religious texts like the Vedas and their auxiliary studies, the procedure of education was one of a pupil's learning by hearing texts and their traditional commentarial explanation from a teacher who had them in his memory. Subsequently, even when texts were written down and studied in written form, this procedure of learning also was designated "hearing". Moreover, during the Buddhist period in India and in Tibet subsequently, the importance of learning even written texts with a teacher

who is master of them can hardly be over estimated. In

Buddhism then the word signifies primarily

the learning of the ideas of Buddhism as set forth in the primary Buddhist scriptures; however, both Indian and classical

Tibetan writers often employ the word for the learning of anything from philosophy to bridge building. In the Tibetan colloquial language, however, the commonly used word for learning is  $\frac{1}{2}$ 

Similarly the word and an its classical usage it frequently connotes quite specifically, as in the above instance, a very rigorous and critical reflection or examination.

These three are discussed at some length through lessons 9, 10, and 11.

- 2. อมมายามศัสเน้า .... ศาสุรม
  - "the Natha Maitreya says . . . . . ", i.e. in the Sutralamkara.
- 3. व्रेंग केंद्र । "a great yogin", yoga ( द्वार वर्जेन ) and meditation ( व्रेंग ा ) being synonymous.
- 4. タズベラマ ヨスマンスラマン "de-liverance and all-knowledge". They are the two objectives of the transmundane paths of Buddhism (see note 8, lesson 5).

  Together they are often designated これマスコマンス

"the <u>summum bonum</u>" or "highest good" in contradistinction to another quite important religious objective, viz. 3 < 3 "a high condition (in the world)" meaning specifically human and divine rebirth in future life.

- 5. エデオ・スター "a high condition (in the world)" See note 4 above.
- "the enemy-slayer", Sanskrit Arhant
   designates an individual who has achieved perfect purification through the complete extirpation of the passions ( うす)
- 7. दवदःश्रेसःददः धोदायेसः क्रीकृत्यः सनासः यः नगमः यदे रहनेनः

"the cessation which is the stoppage of the gross functionings of the sense and mental consciousnesses" - With the exception of certain minor subschools of the Vijnanavada (see note lesson 5), Buddhist philosophy has been singularly reluctant to view consciousness as a single stuff or substratum functioning through the various doors of the five senses. In lieu of a single consciousness utilizing a manifold of sense organs, Buddhism has rather viewed consciousness itself as a manifold of five sense consciousnesses ( 595.98.), a-rising from the contact of a sense organ with its respective objects, plus still a sixth consciousness called mental con-

sciousness ( এবিপ্ন ). This last is consciousness of ideas, the remembered images of things heard and seen, etc.; its organ is viewed as of the same nature as consciousness itself, and its objects are dharmas, i.e. whatever exists.

- "the cessation which is the stoppage of the gross functionings of . . . . " refers to a condition tantamount to unconsciousness, which the Mahayana theories hold occurs at the time when the practicers of the Hinayana paths, of a Śravaka or a Pratyakebuddha, reach the end of their respective paths of purification of the passions; having stopped definitively the arisings of the passions but dedicated only to the accomplishment of their own deliverance, they enter a condition in which the sense and mental consciousnesses do not arise. This condition is understood by the Hinayanist themselves as the attainment of a nirvana on account of which upon the death of the Arhant the psyche-physical aggregates ( લ્લા constituting the individuality cease to arise, and by the Mahayanists as a trance type condition of a long duration from which they are finally aroused by the Buddhas.

8. বুর্বের্রিক সভ্সতিনের - "the small, middle, and great paths", i.e. the paths of a Sravaka, a Pratyakebuddha, and of a Boddhisattva respectively. (see note 13, lesson 4)

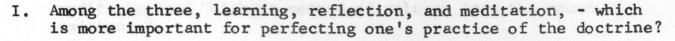
9. 39'54'8'8'

- "a doctrine of width and

for which see note 8, lesson 5.

- "the Jatakas". These are the stories of the Buddha's previous lives during his career as a Bodhisattva.

#### TRANSLATION



For perfecting (the practice of) the doctrine, all three, learn-G. ing, reflection, and meditation, are of great importance. Again, learning is of great importance at the first, reflection in the middle, and meditation at the end; it's like that. Again, for instance, - the reason for the way of learning's being so very important at first is that in order for all of us living creatures to be freed from all ills and to obtain the condition of a Buddha which has perfect felicity, it is necessary to complete meditation upon the path. To do this, one ought to develop a great ascertainment and confidence once one has done a good examination by way of considering the nature of the path, its objects of meditation, its stages, their number, the method of meditation, etc. To develop this (ascertainment and confidence) also, there is no way of its coming if there is no good learning at first. Therefore, the Savior Maitreya says, "From recourse first to learning comes correct fixing of the thought. From a correct fixing of the thought comes gnostic knowledge of the real." Also, scholars say. "A great yogin without learning is like mutilated hands climbing a crag." Thus, it is being said that one who wishes to be a great yogin without any study is like a man with his fingers cut off trying to climb to the peak of a high mountain.

Therefore, some say that although it is necessary to do meditation in order to be free from (the miseries of) the round of existence and to obtain Buddhahood, study and reflection are both obstacles to meditation. The reason is that whatever one thinks about the meaning of that which is heard from another or read in a book by oneself, whichever, is idea-construction; and moreover, since, whether it be a good or a bad thought, is idea-construction, these without distinction are obstacles to meditation, and obstacles to the attainment of deliverance and all-knowledge. For instance, - it's just as it creates an obstacle to escape from prison whether one is bound in a prison by an iron or a golden chain, and likewise it's just as there is no difference in the obscuration of the sun and moon whether by a black or a white cloud. Therefore, once they call the non-performance of any action to cultivate or to avoid and the no-thinking of any thought of good or evil, -

(once it is) the absence of doing these (that they call), "the yoga of no idea-construction", then also they call this
staying without fixing the thought on anything "the highest
meditation" and "highest method of release from the round of
existence".

This, since it rejects that the action of achieving virtue and relinquishing vice (is) the cause of obtaining temporarily a high condition (in the world) (i.e.) the state of a human or a god, makes an obstacle to obtaining a high condition and its causes and result, and it is a real obstaclemaker to the path of obtaining final emancipation and allknowledge along with its causes and result. The reason is that - as the acarya Candrakirti says, 'The cause of a high condition is no other than right conduct." - to obtain in future life a high condition, the desirable body of a man or a god, there is no means of its coming to one who does not observe in this life the right conduct of avoiding the ten nonvirtues. Similarly, as the Blessed One says, "Recognize misery, Relinquish its causes. See cessation. Meditate (its) path", - he is stating that to obtain emancipation one has to cultivate and avoid (things) by way of understanding the actualities of the Four Noble Truths, and similarly, the Blessed One says, "Even though you are free from the great river of the round of existence, now you shall not pass completely into nirvana. Search for the Buddha vehicle." Thus, the Arhant is freed from the (miseries of the) round of existence and once he is satisfied with the mere felicity of his own pacification, he is absorbed in trance for a long time in the cessation which is the stoppage of the gross functionings of the sense and mental consciousnesses, and the Buddha arouses those who so remain from this absorption, and they practice the illimitable activity of a Bodhisattva who accomplishes the vast aim of living creatures, and they are goaded on to having to become a Buddha.

Once one has made the meaning of "inactivity" and "no idea-construction" to remain without any activity at all and without thinking anything at all, - if one is freed from the (miseries of the) round of existence by these, (then), it is without purpose for the Teacher, the Buddha, from his 30th to his 80th year, to take as his basis the paths of the three, the small, middle, and great vehicles and so to teach an illimitable doctrine of depth and breadth, - and not only that, - but for the masters who followed the Teacher to compose many sastras explaining the thought behind the utterances of the Buddha. The great adepts, having practised, went to a high

level of attainment, and it was without purpose for them to compose etc. sastras which clearly teach to others the nature, sequence, etc. of the path which was practised by themselves. Putting far away such a foolish doctrine which pleases laziness, one ought to do at first, as well as one can, an extensive learning of the doctrine which teaches clearly the gospel of good and evil, - (this is) a very important point.

The acarya Asvaghosa says thus in the Jatakas: Learning is said to be like a lamp for clearing away the darkness of ignorance. The reason is that as when a lamp illuminates in a pitch dark house which has a variety of things, one sees clearly the color and shape etc. of the manifold things, when there is good learning one comes to understand clearly things to be avoided and cultivated, the faults and good qualities (respectively), which are taught in the doctrine of the Buddha. Similarly, learning is said to be the best of wealth, which is not stolen by a thief etc. For instance, - although the other worldly wealth of gold, silver, and the like is carried off by thief and robber and is overcome etc. by the four elements, fire and the rest, the wealth of learning, not being such, is like the best of wealth which one has always. Learning is like the best of friends who doesn't change. In the world, cherished boy and girl friends are like dear friends at the time when one has riches and position etc., but at the time when one is poor and destitute, shifting from a friendly attitude, they pretend almost to be unacquainted. The friend of learning, not being such, is a real friend who assists one all the time without shifting. Similarly, learning is like a weapon for defeating the enemy. The reason is that the inner enemy, the great enemy of never knowing any of the points to cultivate and relinquish is overcome by this learning which studies what is to be cultivated and avoided. What need is there to say that it is necessary to learn in order to perform the great action of the doctrine, the method of help from the future life on?

To achieve even the temporary happiness and ease of this life also, if there is no good learning, it is impossible to achieve. For instance, - we from early childhood learn first from parents the way of eating, the way of drinking, etc., and have to understand (many things) gradually. Then one goes to school etc. and has to do a great amount of learning and in order to do the work for the happiness and ease of this life needs to know its method. Here also, once one sees that one is ignorant, if one does not do learning, without being reluctant about the difficulties and expenses one aims at

learning, - just so the necessity for recourse to learning is of great importance for any activity, the secular and the religious.

- Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Nine.
  - क्रमं मेरेता पार्त्रमा प्रमा में माना में मानी मानी मानी माने माना के र्यूमा लेव:वभा

व्यासर वेश राजायक स्ट्रा नार रहेश रेटी

क्राना अर्तर स्था क्रवान हित्तर तर्त्त अवव दे क्राना रेतर तर वाधेवार्थाः अविवादाः विवादान्त्राः विद्यादेत्।

क्रिनेवास भवे वेर अपवि भर भर भर रा अरेर प्रा

み、かか、そろ、そろ、と、からかいとうはとして、ない、なり、から、そろ、から、そろ、

तरंकुः अर्द्धवन्ताने न्यान्ति के व्यानिताने

राया ह्याल्य र की बात पर्वर का ना ने ने ने की लूट वारे र रेते र्व रवानिरामराश्चानमा नरामराश्चित्राचा स्थान स्थान स् र्ज्यन नेता

ある、よりと、これ、あれ、こう、い、かか、かって、ろうり、これり、これがって、かって、

ता दे.पर्व. द्वरमानादः पर्वा नेता

व्यान्तरे त्यव न्यव त्यान्ते नावव नवाना में नारे नासुरस न्याना 351

चारमर भ्राचम भारामर मर भेर चेर पर नावना न रे सूं भ की अस्ता

अवदार्त्रक्तिः अक्षव्याना र रेर्

で、も、く、ころ、こう、これ、これが、これが、これとうちょうできる。 न्नामान्त्रवास्त्रम्नान्तरः

- णान्त्रेट्टातालवाच्या शरमान्त्रेटा मेन्याता दे ने वहामान र क्रिया विसाय से से प्राप्त है। 11 प्रत्यत हे हैं वे के त्र में त्र में प्रति वर्ष क्रिया विसाय है।
- 12 द्वान्यर्स्सान्त्र्वानान्यात्रास्यात्र्वान्त्र्यम् अवस्यम् विष्याः
- 13 व्यान्त्रेन्ना की सक्ष्रील व क्ष्रिं नारे ने

New honorifics in Lesson Nine.

- 3 न्निस्तर पर्ने नामन नान् पर्ने सामना
- २ नेग्वर क्र-नास्ट्र की
- 15 KMIREA MAKA KMIREA 3)

# LESSON TEN

विवास्यार्ट्यारह्वं दर्म्यातार्ट्या इक्षा विवास द्यारह्वं दर्म्यातार्ट्या

त्रभाराज्ञरायात्र्यात्रमाक्त्रमायाः वत्रात्रमायाः वर्षात्रमायाः वर्षात्रमायाः रिवाद्यान्त्राः निवाद्यान्यायात्वात्यात्वात्यात्वात्वात्याः विवाद्याः विवाद्याः विवाद्याः वस्रायावेनाताक्रमाच्याचेन्यंत्याचेना व्यत्त्रिंग्ची नवन्त्रेवायते देव दनाने के नाववासमाञ्चारादर। रदानामादेवार्येताताविमार्थर। देख्र्रावसवासा नहराः निर्मान्ति क्याने देव के नावशक्षाता कर्ने नावर्ति वा क्षावर्ते र्टामध्यातप्रत्यातालयात् विचानम्रिन्म् द्वाराद्या व्राप्तम् स्वार्थाः स्वार्थाः नामन्द्रः। वस्रभातमानहना निर्धानमान्तर्वसारित में वसाद्याता र्धेट्टा हिना ट्रेम ही देश देश हैं निस्त मान नह नह ना निर्मा परित समार्थ. विर्यम्भाता रत्रमःवा हत्याः हवाक्राः वक्षाः क्रिमः स्रम् ताहरायाववाक्षाः सर あっかくにまれて、それらいとうして、あっていれていいなっていまっていかい。 म्नेन्द्रान्यन्त्वर्त्वन्ताः नहनः द्वर्ष्यम् वर्त्रन्ते ने र्यवं रि. यात्रक्ष विद्र । येयात्रर रे याद्य स्त्रक्ष मा ग्री वावता क्ष्मा भार प्रमा ग्री रूसाम्द्रान्त्रान्त्र निर्मान्यरान्त्र । देवात्र मान्याय । त्र । त्रान्य । त्र । त्र । त्र । त्र । त्र । त्र । वर्गाम्त्र-क्रम् ग्रिन्मन्यपह्रवर्त्विनान्न्सायाकाः इत्हरा।।

द्रेक्शतक्रटातपुःश्रुं, धक्ताबटाका नामू टाक्षटाल्या नुप्ताक्ष्या नुप्ता हुत्या नुप्ता नुप्ता हुत्या नुप्ता नु भैव दिश्चाद्रा सुप्ता श्रे असा सी प्रमुद्धा नुप्ता न द्रीत्र्यं त्राच्यात्रच्यात्राक्ष्यात् त्र्र्याः श्रीत्रविद्राक्ष्यात्र्यात्राच्याः त्राच्याः त्र्याः त्राच्याः व्याव्याः व्यावः व्याव्याः व्यावः वयः व्यावः व्

स्रीत् । देश्व्यत् स्रात् विवास्त्र । स्रीत् ।

ल्य-इट्। ब्रुच-अर-७-नावसा-ग्री-पेट-ट्-एड्-वि-झ्र्य-ट्न्य्स-टा-वे-य-इट-नाय-क्र्य-

2:347 विनावसानेरानाने रामराक्षितास्थासारित्नेनितरेत्वेनसारातारानस्था धूँ.रार्ट्र.धैम.रेजुर्यमातारे.छ.इस्रेयुर्या.पे.रार्थमानुःवेतत्तःक्रयमात्त्रः र्यर.मुस्टि.मूप्.मी.क्ष्मसा.मिष्म्य्यसा.पास्त्रमा.में चेत्राच्या देशाचालर. म्।रवर् रे. एकर्निर कर्निर अपने विना पास्र ना नेर विना माना र ने ने नेर्या तास्यविकार्ग्ये देश्यामात्त्रे हेर्यमामात्त्रे दरा रवात्र्रापहेव देश्या रालवेताता रेश्चरामातात्रमात्रं हार् हार्न्स्वमाहराज्याता लूट्यं लुवं क्ट्रं हुन देश हिंच न्यार पटा देवं व ने हेन के ने हिंच के व के र्स्टिन्स्न ना क्रिन् न स्रें अस्य ग्रह्न न में न स्र न में न स्र में अ.र्रा देर-अ.बर्स्अअ.स.मेंबतात्वसाताःक्षे.वंहांबेशतात्रा बार्थर.प्राम्बासाता.लट.में.वर्नेदेरता.लव.१८८। व्हेरव.ट्रे.ट्र्या.एड्व.अ... वन् तर्मन वन् ने द्रान्ति । वे निवन् के वर्षे ने ने तर वरे के दे के मि.सेंचात्राक्तात्राक्त्राच्याच्याच्याच्याच्याच्यात्रात्राक्त्राच्याः म्याच्याः म्याच्याः म्याच्याः म्याच्याः र्न्त्रा नहवास्त्रा नरावर्र्राहर्राष्ट्राध्यवसायम्नवनास्त्राला हिर्देशहर्वाहरत्यः कवः विनात्यः वे नावयः वेरानः मेरा कुन्नवस्त्रवेत्रवस्त्रम् स्थानस्त्रन्ते न्यानस्य रात्ताः द्वार्यम् प्रिनावस्य क्र. चार्ट्ट. क्र. एत्पा क्र. जून प्रमान नाम नाम क्र. क्र. क्र. क्र. क्र. व्याप प्रमान प्रमान क्र. वसारदान्त्री निर्मानातातात हेरा रात्र हेरान हरे ने सार हिरानर

त्रां क्ष्यं ने त्रां क्षेत्रं क्षेत्र

## LESSON TEN

VOCABULARY	
देशप्रेस.	ascertainment
में न	lung
स्व (६वस्व	to burn
मः सर्वाः	color
렇5'	impurity
MC.437.	again
Ě	stone
पर्न.	to rub
नुसन.	respect
कु अर्द्ध व	reason
नार्ड न	leading principle
लब्नाम	part
विनाम्यः	mental stabili- zation; calming, <u>samatha</u>
स्याम्	transcendental vision; vipasyanā
(इस.लर.) ४ ह्स अ	to conquer
BAN.	desire; attach- ment to
(अरूबे.लर.)रेबंध.	to take delight or pleasure in

stanes, entoner	
र्मियाह्य.त.	object of a per- ception, or of a conception, or of meditation
क्याय.	to run
サイド、 明ま、これ、山戸 c. 御りと.	to be distracted
47.4	<pre>frivolity; laughter; excitement</pre>
₹.	to lose
हर् हर् हर्	loose (ly)
हें दन	lethargy
रदेश	to mix up, to confuse
₹ <b>₹</b> .८.	darkness
इंच्याना	heaviness,
नावेद	sleepiness, drowsiness
न्त्राक	steadiness
इर रहेश	union, joining, coupling

### EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

the actual or real meaning mistaken, deluded to tell, to report worth, value even more so most detailed; finest indeed! of course! gold expert scripture and reason literally was a second of to make nil, to anihilate Buddhist and non-Buddhist meditative concentration, samadhi one-pointedly as long as one likes; whatever one likes in the presence of . . . . 'analytic meditation' 'fixative meditation'

NOTES

- 1. TARATA "the scriptures etc.", i.e., the scriptures and their commentarial explanation.
- RENN' , ( अर्देन पर 2. ( इस' पर' , etc. - "to conquer", "to be pleased", etc. In the classical language adverbial type expressions like भर्थात्र. + the verb most often represent the devices systematically employed by the Tibetan lotsabas to render in the Tibetan language Sanskrit prepositions like vi-, abhi-, etc. which in the Sanskrit language are prefixed to verb roots thereby modifying the meaning of the basic verb. As a consequence, the literary Tibetan language is a repositary of a vast number of the above type verb compounds which were originally neologisms invented expressly for the purposes of translating Sanskrit, and these for the most part have not found their way into the colloquial language. In this book, such verb compounds occur principally in direct quotations from classical texts as in the present instances, also as technical terms, and even occasionally they represent words in usage in the colloquial language as well, e.g. or \$21'97'9" ("to be distracted", इस. मेल्ट. ₹₹₹59 "to be purified". Again, in the present instances, both the simple form RENN and SARA

are commonly used in the spoken language and with the above meanings.

- 3. ベロ' "an object of cognition" "a cognitum". Here, the cognition itself is designated by ヴロンスず , and the cognition-cognitum relation by ヴロンスマ , Sanskrit visaya-visayin.
- 4. まれ、可心で (まれ、ロス、可心でつ ) "distraction". See note 5 below.
- sanskrit layauddhatya. These two obstacles to meditative concentration represent 'the too low' and 'the too high' respectively, (laya) designating a "lethargy" or "torpor" or "sluggishness", whereas (squared) means "wild", and auddhatya "high" or "elevated". As a term in use for describing meditative procedure (squared) denotes excitement in general such as distracts the mind from remaining fixed on its meditative object. However, it is at times contrasted with (squared) "distraction" in which instance (squared) denotes the excitement caused by attachment or desire to another object whereas (squared)

denotes the excitement or distraction caused by hostility and the other passions to another object.

 the Vaibhāṣika school of Buddhism for instance holds to be present to some extent in every mental act, whereas the other Buddhist schools hold it to be present only in some mental acts, i.e. whenever there is an actual absorption or a deliberate focusing of the mind upon an object. This focusing of consciousness is not necessarily meditative, and the word signifies in general just a mental focus on an object. Such is the general meaning of the word; however, the term is also used in particular - as in the present text - to signify the mental focus effected by the deliberate act of meditating, and here also the term denotes primarily "mental focus" or "concentration".

## TRANSLATION

- Among the three, learning, reflection, and meditation, how does one identify reflection.
- This so-called consideration signifies a consideration which functions to find an ascertainment by way of doing well a correct examination of the meaning once one has heard the scriptures and the rest of the Buddha. Even though one has heard from another or read in books by oneself these meanings which show the points to develop and to avoid, one does a good examination by considering these, for if one does not search out the actual meaning it is impossible to develop a good ascertainment which is in conformity with the meaning and one will be mistaken; therefore, it is necessary to find an ascertainment by performing a good examination by consideration. For an example of the necessity to do a good examination by consideration after one has learned, - in merely hearing a reporting of even a situation in the world, one does a good examination of its worth, without trusting it at once like a dog encountering a lung, and then if there is (something) to develop or avoid (on the basis of the report) this is especially important, - and even more so with the actuality of a religious doctrine which is difficult to understand, - there is of course a necessity for a firm ascertainment which trusts (it) after one has done a most detailed examination of its meaning by reflection, without leaving it as merely (something) learned.

In sutra the Buddha the Blessed Lord also says to the disciples who are followers, "When you practise the doctrine which I have taught, - for example, (it is) like when a gold expert is collecting gold, first he burns it with fire, and by way of its exterior color (sees) whether or not there is a defect, and then by way of cutting (he sees) whether or not there is an impurity in the gold inside, and then again he rubs it with a stone (and sees) whether or not there is a fine impurity which is difficult to detect, - he investigates it well by burning, cutting, and rubbing and holds it as the best gold when he perceives no defects, - also other than the necessity of practising and meditating my doctrine after having done a good examination by scripture and reason as to what faults and good qualities there are and are not, it is not fitting to practise holding literally all which I have taught, on account of respect for me." Therefore, the necessity to find an ascertainment of the meaning of what one has learned through doing a good investigation by reflection before

the practice of meditation is of great importance.

Also, for meditation, - generally speaking there are many kinds of meditation (which are) common and not common (to Buddhists and non-Buddhists). Nonetheless if one brings all these together by way of their specifics and leading principles, they are subsumed by two, meditation in the direction of stabilization, and meditation in the direction of transcendental vision. Moreover, the Savior Maitreya says, "One understands the passions to be vanquished by transcendental vision together with stabilization. In the beginning this finding of stabilization brings about pleasure in the absence of attachment to the world." Thus as said, in order to make nil from the root, the passions and their habit-formations, it is necessary to make nil the apprehension of a self (which is) the root of the passions, and in order to make this mil, it is necessary to develop the wisdom of transcendental vision which perceives non-self as manifest (before the eyes). order to develop the wisdom of transcendental vision such as this which is not common (to non-Buddhists), it is necessary to attain (mental) stabilization beforehand. Not only that, - although generally speaking there is even a variety of transcendental vision which is common to Buddhist and non-Buddhist and which is not common, there is no way of attaining any of these without stabilization's coming beforehand; therefore, at the start one must develop stabilization concentration, this is of great importance.

As for so-called "stabilization", - at the time when this mind of ours thinks on a virtuous object, being unable to remain one-pointedly on the object, it runs by force of attraction to outer objects of desire etc., and this ensuing coming under the power of distraction is termed "excitement"; and even though the mind remains on its object, it is necessary to hold this object clearly and firmly. As once a portion of the clarity of the object is lost, it becomes slightly unclear, or even though there is clarity, once a portion of holding (the object) firmly is lost, the manner of holding (the object) becomes loose; such is termed "lethargy". Since mental focus becomes confused with this (fine state of lethargy), it is difficult to identify, and when it arises, once mental focus comes to have this defect, however much one meditates, it is not possible to achieve a flawless stabilization. Not just this, but since a torpor like a darkness descending on the mind, and drowsiness etc. also arise, the necessity of trying to check this lethargy immediately on recognising it is of great importance. By way of avoiding the two defects of excitement and lethargy,

such as this, the particular mental focus which can concentrate the mind on its object one-pointedly, clearly, firmly, and for as long as one likes is termed "stabilization".

This (mental) stabilization effects chiefly the steadiness of the mind's remaining one-pointedly upon its object. The particular wisdom which investigates the meditative object while this steadiness is present without deterioration is termed "transcendental vision". When there comes the attainment of transcendental vision such as this, it is also termed the attainment of the coupling of stabilization and transcendental vision. Therefore, generally speaking, there are two(types of) meditations (i.e.) analytic and fixative. One calls analytic meditation, a meditation which mainly investigates its object by way of many reasons etc. at the time of doing meditation. All analytic meditations are meditations which are subsumed on the side of transcendental vision. As for fixative meditation, a meditation which effects chiefly the mind's remaining one-pointedly on its object without any investigation of the object at the time of doing meditation is called fixative meditation. All these fixative meditations happily are subsumed on the side of stabilization.

#### EXERCISES

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson 16.
  - र् द्वाचर दिवस्थाता वाता के से अवता सेटा देवाता के सेटसा वाट.

2 अनिवस्थान नेर्भानित्तर निर्देश

- अ प्रमान्त्रिकाक्षात्मः कर्णन्त्रका कर्ष्या कर्ष्या वार्षेत्र व्यक्ष वार्षे
- यान्त्रान्त्रेत्। सामक्ष्यान्त्रान्त्रित्वित्।स्यान्त्रान्त्यान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रेत्याः संस्थान्त्रित्वितःक्षित्याः श्रीत्यः त्यान्त्रान्त्राः स्थान्त्राः
- सर्दिरात्वादीशक्राक्तर्यक्षात्वर्धनात्वादीरमात्ताद्र्य। १ याम्परापात्वरत्वादीशक्षाक्षरतात्वविद्यात्याक्षराक्ष्याक्ष

6 तें वर्षेत्र सें स दे कें ता ने ना ना केंद्र पेंदर देश

- के.ल्रे.ट्रमा
- 8 र्र.च.च्न.चनम्पत्तः स्वान सर्वतः नावेसः नारे ......र्च्नातः तर्वतः पर्वतः । धर्मेरा
- े जिलावसार् वं तार्व तार्वासार्य में सर्व नार्व रेरी
- 10 वि.चार्डमा.व्.रस्या.र्.च्.र्.चर्थर्थ्यं
- 12 वित्व वेर न दे वृद् व सुवाना दे र्यू द ने दे रा
- 13 प्रंत्र क्षेत्र भक्र नेर नेर नेर निर तर हिन निर है। नेर ने जी पर र ना

- स्ट्रास्त्र । स्ट्रिंग स्ट्रिंग स्ट्रिंग स्ट्रिंग श्री स्ट्रिंग श्री स्ट्रिंग स्ट्र
- 15 संस्तित्रास्यास्य कर्मात्रेयात्रा
- १६ र्.च.सेच.अब्ट.रट.रविर.स्रा.चक्रच.त.च्रंतत्वा

New honorifics in Lesson 10:

- 1 24-4-4-4-4-4-4-1
- क्र निर्देश-क्ष्यान्त्र क्ष्यान्त्र निर्देश क्ष्यां क्ष्यां निर्देश क्ष्यां क
- १ थ्रे.माठवं नाजुनामा मानवी

# LESSON ELEVEN

स्मान्त्र न्या स्मान्त्र न्या । स्मान्य न्या । स्

समाक्रममान् क्रियां स्वास्त्र मान्यां मान्यां

अक्रे. त्राष्ट्रमा स्ट्रां त्रां त्

श्चर्यंश्चरायायक्याचेत्रा

व.७.नावमा.ग्री.रेम्ननमा.लेप.व.२.१८.जंगमा.मूप.मट्यू.र्टी ग्रेट.व.रेम्ननमा.लेप. बाट.एडंबार्युचा.फा.धेंबा.घट.खु.चावका.एकेंच्छंच.ग्री.दूर। टन्दावी खुट.टट.डू.फा. स्यमात्रार्भासाः में वे.टे.विमानमाः सेताः माववालरास्त्रा लवान्त्रा लवान्तरासा म्याद्रिक्ष्यं संभयाद्रियास्य म्याद्रिक्षाः स्थान्त्रिक्ष्याः स्थान्त्रिक्ष्याः स्थान्त्रिक्ष्याः र्टर-यात्रे अन्यसारे वे विद्यात्या रदाष्ट्री-यहाता देरात्रे मिला वेचा पार्वे वात्रा में निकान लगा ना मेरी रे.लर रेम्बान में बेरेर्स में लूर तथना रर ने लरेर्स. म्सान्त्रित्रम्यस्त्रेन्त्रस्य नित्रम्निन्त्रित्रम् मामकार्त्रीयकार् हेवर्तातार्त्र्यात्मर ह्याद्रयाः मित्रह्याः पावसाय्वराह्री अवर... म्बर्गार्ट्न् र्वायमानातातात्वर्द्र्र्युः वित्रत्त्रातात्वर्वेष् क्षेत्र...र्येत्रिक्षात्रित्त्र्त्त्री. वतस्त्री सान देव वसा व नवसा सेत स्था र्वास्त्राताक्षरी दे.क्.रकामारकारकार्यात्रेत्वा म्यामानवमार्टान् वर ्रीर.रि.एर्स्वाताञ्चरत्र्रात्रेरो राज्यर्गात्रमान्यात्रात्रात्राञ्चर्याद्रवार्थर् र्रन्त्वन्द्रभायवनार्द्रभायानार्त्न्यम् मुन्द्रन्तंन्न्यायाः स्वादा विनार्द्र। माअमानावमान्द्रिं देति स्वमा तामा असा द्वामाना तामा द्वा ह्वा नीया それろうとりかいのかりからからから、まち、まり、おからまりというかって

र्यं मेर्नित्र देरियाचे आहेर्या अरिस्ट्रिया अर्था प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान रहर हैर है जिल्द कर। इस हैंग देश नव देन पर हमा माने न महिला न है मारा क्रिन्टियाताचे। अअसावाक्सान्ट्रिं स्टिसास्यास्यासार्ट्यान्येयाताः प्राप्तिकार्याद्याप्तिकार्याद्यात्रम् विकार्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्या विराज्या रवेनसाराकातिवाराष्ट्रवाचिताकुत्राकुत्रकुत्वराव्यर्भिताराक्षेत्र ट्रहिन्द्रिक्तिकाता स्वार्तिकाता स्वार्ट्यात्वी मानमानट्रात्वाता तापानिकातार्।प्रकात्रेराप्त्रेत्रातात्र। श्रेरालटास्क्रकाकात्वराद्वितरीयाः है... र्ज्यम्बर्गाताक्षाक्र्याक्ष्याक्ष्याक्ष्याच्याच्याच्या एक्टा नर्भेन्नत्र सेन्याना माल्या राज्या नामा नामा नामा नामा निया है ने न्या पर्वेट में लूर्तान्त्री वर्षताष्ट्रियर प्रहूर्यातात्री देवतारियमा कुवे. त्यम् राज्या रश्चामानाता क्रिवाह्व दिन्दिनाना हिनानेन। तर्ने स्था दश्चामा हैव प्रेन्थे ब्रियालवार्ट्यकाराम्बाराम्याः समायना स्पार्त्या स्पार्त्या वर्षात्या न्षेत्रित्रे स्वमा द्वता स्वमा कवा क्षेत्रा क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्ष ब्रिन्स् अंतुत्तर्र्ति स्त्रे विच प्रमानिक दिन विकालिक विकालिक विकालिक तर्वेश. हे. हेट. ट्रेड्व. की. लूब. एव. तमा अत्य हे. खे. चमा सवा मा लर्चा वर्षा. नर्स्र-छर्न्सरारार्रा केसान्वेववेरानवी वैद्वान्त्रम्यक्षास्य पार्सेव.ल्ब.वी.न देवा....रविर.विर.अधवान्त्रामाती.क्र.ता.क्ष.वे.ख्यान्त्री देवा.ता. के.चर.वेट.त.ची समसा.चक्स.क.च.छ.सेचसा.मेंत्रुक्सा.मरवाचुट्सा.वहूट. र्यामात्राध्येय.विद्याःस्ट्राना त्राम्ल्राल्टाष्ठेवाक्काप्टा प्रमायवेवाक्यान्दाप्यान्यः व्याक्तान् वाक्षां प्रमुयायर वेदाय विद्यान्त्र विवाय इवायर वितर वेद

त्रत्री रुष्ट्रस्त्रमान्त्रे रवन्तर्दा विमानविव के र्यून्स रूट्या ह्रेन्य पदा र्वमान्ड्वापर्यमान्यान्त्राम् नर्वेद्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्र मूर्यार्धं व विश्व में मुकातर हिर्ता हुना रूरी इत्तर र्वेचा नषु सेवना व्रित्तर्नर्स्त्यानरस्त्योगःक्र्याचेत्रपरेशवामक्तार्यर्गः तार्र्यत्र्वात्र्याः श्रीस्वमात्रित्यात्रित्त्रित्त्रित्त्रात्त्र नार्ट्र-विर्न्त्र, खेन्।म.केन्ट्रन्त्रना नक्रन्त झन्नेक्रना हिन्दा ने त्रत्रेन्यम् सारा प्राक्तिके के निया हैना हैना हैना में निया हैना वर्वन्यत्यवयान्वान्तेन्द्रन्तुन्रस्त्रिव्यत्यंत्रस्यवा यवमः चावनान्ने क्विन्दर्ये पर्ट्रता हिन्द्रें देवन या हेना ने न ने प्राचा अवायर ८र्द्धाताचुर्याची मुअसामावसानकरात्युं सेतमारवर कुरात्यवारी पा... राष्ट्रमान्त्रमान्त्रतान्त्रमान्त्रमान्यम् स्त्रमान्यम् क्वान्त्रक्रास्त्र्रावर्ववविवार्भेराध्याम् । मेर्यान्त्रा बोर्कात्र हा सरकार वी तटा मट हेट दे हिंदी ही एका पा की वे के तो का स्वीत त्रि.छेम्।ताक्तत्ता दे.ब्र्नेट्टिन् ग्रीन्ड्वारयेमापास्त्रमा नर्षः ब्र्नेत्ये एटि.एटिटे.... तक्रीत मुंब क्षा देन बुव मुन्म माना माने रेने तु. एटे. मुंद्र म देनान्त्रेमार्विक्षित्मात्ता मुक्तानावमात्त्रेत्रात् । मेर्नान्त्र क्षान्त्रीयास्त्रहेन्द्रविष्ठम्यामत्त्रवाचीमत्त्रहेन्द्रवा द्वमास्य इ.एस्रेश्रस्त्राम्बर्टा याः वातातिं त्रित्रें वार्ये हें हुट वित्रे ... पात्रानुकाके क्रांस्त्रामा त्या विय क्रिया में मुत्या प्राच ने क्रिये वर विय एट्र-मा अमा ना कमा देश दूरा एड्र्व किया मा ही: क. प्रमा द्यामा टा इंग किया. विनाताची श्राभादेनानहित्यमेगानावेच्याचीक्षवात्तात्ता मूर्यानेताकदेक्त.

स्युमार्भेट.ब्रेट.लया.ट्र.विका केंट.ब्र्य.ध्येतमा.एव.प्रत्यापा.वेमार्थ्या. र्युमारान्त्री मुकामानावमानापुः स्टामान्त्रीतास्यमानारे स्टामाने स्ट्रिक्ट् लयान् लेया...केटम्स्टावी अध्यक्षान् अध्यक्षान् अप्तियं वित्रवेश. र्.श.एर्.चर.एडम.म्र. च्रम्वी मुक्मा.चक्म.र्थं राष्ट्र.सेटम.मुक्मा.व्रेर... र्स्ट्रिट्र निराष्ट्रिय्त ने अन्यायायातात्वर अद्द्रिण्य मेर से से ति तर्दे त्रविव नवसार्वत्रा इत्हेसारासार् स्वायाना विदारेता न सुंशताक्षाक्ष्यत्त्वेश्वरात्क्रित्र हेन्न्य्येत्रात्त्र हेन्न्यः श्रेत्रात्र हेन्य्या या. प्रात्त्रेव स्ट्रास्य श्री तर्त्य वर्ता वर्ता कार्य कार्य तर्त्य विवादा वर्षा कार्य पर हर दे प्रह्में से अ अ पर्टर न हित्ति ए केन हिन हन । ता स्वरातपुः अत्तर्निकः देक्षः वर्त्वर्यसाम् वसाप्तादरः स्वर्गामः हरादे एड्रेंच.पास.मेंस.नए.नर्ने पप्त.थनसा.बिर.तर.४व.र.पविट.च.ल्रेंटार्डा ड्.लट्ट्र्स्ट्र्र्स्ट्र्र्स्ट्रिश्राचार्र्द्र्यमाताक्ष्रेत्र्यमाताक्ष्रे र्करत्त्र, लट्ते में त्रिमें सूट में। अहर किसामुश्मा कुत्रे न नेबास ता हे लट अञ्चर्वंत्प्रेप्टं र एड्वं भेवं ये र छिटतर दव वेच एस्पर्रं ते नवसर् अत्यत्वराश्चरश्चित्रेता वेनावसाग्वित्तरेतात्तित्तरेताः वेनार्यरावा रे लानम्बन्धानुवर्ष्वार्ष्यान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रान्त्रा वर्ष्वर्षेत्र। हिंद्र्षेत्रः एत्रेट.क्.मश्रेंश.के.प्रथ्य प्रमानि नेट.प्रमान्ति भूव. एवं त्राचा अराज ना रस्त-स्नारीने

# LESSON ELEVEN

# VOCABULARY

GN.	body; physical condition
वेद्रातः	danger
न्द्रवाच्य	wild animal
न्तु नहीं सार	a gathering to gether; a collection
至5	play, sport
न्नर्कर	loud noise
न्वेव्यः	solitary
ति ति से अर्थे	quiet
年年 8日 五一	Vairocana
美麗· Bの、五て、	lotus posture, Padmāsana
<b>डे</b> र'	half
ह्म न	navel
ल्यामार्	at, beside
सम्रेन्	thumb
5×1.8×	to place to- gether
स्यास्त्रम्थः	backbone
क्रेन् क्रेन	crooked
वन.स्न.	straight

555.5	shoulder
निर्देश.	open
न्द्रहा.	closed
<b>18</b> .	nose
The state of the s	peak, tip
2	teeth
सक्रिंत	to grit
महार्ने	lips
वर्षेत्र त	to press
and the second	tongue
天文 一	palate
सूर्य.	to imagine
REA!	to fix
ए हिंचीता. स्ट्रीया. इंश्रेचीता.	spontaneity
ह्यास.	sign, mark
एडिया.	short
49.2	a little
M4.94.	to proceed, to advance
एकी बादा (६वरी वा)	to bend; to force
がら(つかりの)	to lengthen

attentiveness too much introspective awareness to lower, to depress to raise, to heighten, to cheer up spy effort to concentrate conditioning Madhyantavibhanga Sutralamkara

Bhavanākrama to be accustomed; to be acclimatized dislike; uneasiness heavy, sluggish experience smaller meditation, trance, dhyana clairvoyance, paranormal cognition

#### EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

amicable conditions

inamicable condition, hostile conditions

coming and going, traffic

circumstances of body structure

according to its (their) natural condition; as is natural

meditative support, meditative object

whichever way is convenient
without effort
spontaneously

mental fixation, mental fixity
to continue
to go away from
faults and virtues
as one wishes

TARARISTO put into one's mental continuum

made supple for use
a possible danger
incalculable

### NOTES

- 2. 452 "and" is the enclitic "and" concluding this sevenfold enumeration.
- and mind of the Buddha is generally represented by a Buddha image, the books of the scriptures, and a stupa respectively. Similarly, the bodies of particular Bodhisattvas are, for instance, represented by their own iconography, their speech by their respective mantras, and their mind by a particular symbol,—Avalokitesvara, for example, by a lotus; Manjusri by a sword, etc. Any of these are often used as a meditative support for the practice of (mental) stabilization.

वेद दी विष्ठास्य पर पहेंनानी

"The mind is fixed to a meditative object. Taken away it is refixed. It is fixed closely. It is trained. It is pacified. It is completely pacified. It is made one-pointed. It is made even." In both the Sanscrit and the Tibetan, the key descriptive terms for the nine mental fixations are verbs. These have however been nominalized in the English translation as more congenial to English in rendering a system of classification.

- 6. প্রস্থা (প্রস্তুর্পানা ) "mental dexterity = মান্যামানান্ত্রের "a mind tempered for work" or "for use". These are the key descriptive terms for describing the actual attainment of both প্রস্থা and প্রস্থানার .
- 7. ક્રાસેલ્સપોર્વાકેલ્લિક્સિલિક્સિલિક્સિલિક્સિલિક્સિલિક્સિલિક્સિલિકિસિલ

#### TRANSLATION

- I. Well then, how ought one to meditate this so-called stabilization?
- To meditate (mental) stabilization one needs all the internal G. and external conditions which are emicable and needs the absence of inamicable conditions. If one asks what are the amicable conditions, - (they are) the best place for meditating stabilization (, and this is) (where) the land and the water are suitable to one's individual constitution, and the amicable condition of food and clothing is easily obtainable, - having a good companion who is in accord, - and there is slight danger of the inamicable conditions, fire and flood etc., and thieves, and slight danger of wild animals etc, - and likewise it is not a place where there is the traffic of many people and where there is the laughter and play of (people) gathered together; it is good if it happens to be like the teaching which teaches the necessity for a quiet and solitary place which has little of the sound which constitutes the danger of loud noise etc. to mental focusing.

Then, the actual way of doing meditation, - first, the way of staying as to the body, - here there are seven specifics of the way of sitting of the Buddha Vairocana called having the seven bodily dharmas of Vairocana." It is good if one can (sit) thus. As for these, first, it is well if one can (put) both one's feet in lotus position, and if one cannot (do) this, it is also possible to do a half lotus position. How one sits depends on what are the circumstances of one's individual body structure, and it is all right to sit and place the two feet however is comfortable. Second, one has to arrange the two hands in concentration (mudra), placing the left hand below and the right above at the level of the navel and putting the two thumbs together. Third, - the backbone straight like an arrow, - one must stay straight like an arrow without the backbone's being crooked front or back, and right or left. Fourth, - one arranges the two shoulders straight according to their natural condition. Fifth, - one should arrange the two eyes neither too open nor too closed and looking slightly toward the tip of the nose. Sixth, - one should arrange the lips and teeth as is natural without especially gritting the teeth or too much pressing the lips, etc. and seventh, - one should put the tip of the tongue slightly to the palate.

Then, when the conditions amicable to meditating stabi-

lization and the way of posturing the body are right, there are quite many methods as to a meditative object for stabilization. Generally speaking, it is possible to practise stabilization whatever one makes the meditative support. For example, - there are even those who practise, having made a piece of wood or a stone the meditative support. Nonetheless, if one makes the meditative support some object of the body (or) speech (or) mind of the Buddhas or Bodhisattvas etc. or makes the meditative support some object of one's own faith, it is better. Moreover, once one has made as a meditative support - whichever is convenient - a meditative object which is actually present or a meditative object mentally imagined, the way of practising stabilization through recourse to nine techniques is taught, starting from "at the beginning one's mind is fixed one-pointedly on the meditative object" up to "at the end one's mind goes spontaneously without effort to the meditative object by way of being free of the faults of excitement and lethargy"; roughly to summarize these as taught: - the first mental fixation is called "interiorizing", Other than fixing (the mind) again and again, this is the incapacity of one's mind to remain at first one-pointedly on the meditative object for a long stretch. During this first mental fixation, the mind becomes distracted from its object over and over again by thoughts. At this time, it seems as if many more thoughts come than previously. Even though more thoughts are not coming at this time, since one is examining the mind it is taught to be a sign of recognizing (the flux of) ideation. As for the second mental fixation, "duration fixation", - once the mind advances a little from its incapacity to remain on its object but for a short time (as) during the period of the first mental fixation, it is called having the mental focus which can lengthen the duration a little by staying put on the (meditative) object. The third, "refixation", means that when the mind goes away from remaining on its object, the mind is again forced within, and, so lengthening the duration, one fixes it one-pointedly on the object. During the period of the first and second mental fixations, there is a longer duration of the mind's being distracted than its remaining (on the object); during the period of the third, there is a longer duration of its remaining (on the object) than its being distracted. The fourth, "close fixation", - once one has developed a great power of attentiveness, there is fixation continuously on the object. inasmuch as it does not loose the meditative object, it is superior to the first three. As for the fith, "the disciplined", - during the period of the fourth, there is the danger of coming under the sway of subtle lethargy because of the mind's

being too much drawn within by the great power of attentiveness. Therefore, at this time (i.e. of the fifth) one examines the mind by introspective awareness and so recognizes (when) there is present the danger of the mind's being depressed, and by way of reflecting on the beneficial qualities of mental focus, one has to heighten the mind again. As for introspective awareness so-called, it is like a mental spy which from a corner of the mind does a scrutiny of the mind for faults and virtues. As for the sixth, the "pacified", - during the period of the fifth mental fixation, on account of the fault of too much heightening the mind there is a great danger of a subtle excitement's coming, and once one recognizes this by introspective awareness, there is a checking of this immediately. The seventh, "the completely pacified", - during the period of this, even though one has perfected the powers of attentiveness and introspective awareness, one then develops the power of effort and perceives as faults even a subtle lethargy or excitement, and (the seventh) is a practice of meditation getting rid of these as much as one can. Although during the period of the fifth and sixth, there is a great danger of harm (to the mental focus) by whichever, lethargy or excitement, during the seventh on account of the development of the power of effort, there becomes slight the danger of interruption which harms (the mental focus) by lethargy and excitement. The eighth, "the one-pointed", - in the beginning at the time when one is concentrating one-pointedly on the object, then if one makes a little effort there is the capacity of extending the duration of the concentration according to one's wish without even subtle lethargy or excitement during the concentration. The ninth, "even fixation", - although during the period of the eighth mental fixation one has to depend on a little effort, here (at the ninth) there is the capacity of extending the duration of (remaining on) one's object for as long as one wishes without relying on effort. The above nine techniques of mental fixation, also the five faults, laziness etc., which are inamicable to meditative focus, the way of recourse to eight counterconditionings, effort etc., which abolish these, likewise the way of practising these nine mental fixations by six powers, and the manner etc. in which these nine mental fixations are condensed into four placements of thought are taught in detail in the Madhyanta-vibhanga and the Sutralamkara of the savior Maitreya, the Bhavanakramas of Kamalasila, the small and large Lam rims of the lord Tsong kha pa, etc.; from among these explanations, here was explained just a rough part of the way of identifying the nine mental fixations.

As for the details, - one ought to understand them through putting into one's mental continuum the instructions of a guru (who is) "the good friend (of the Mahayana)" or through doing a good reading of the above books by oneself. If all the techniques of the nine techniques etc. of mental fixation have gone well, finally one can obtain actual stabilization. If one asks what is actual stabilization, - during the period of the ninth mental fixation the mind is free of lethargy and excitement, and after there arises the capacity (of remaining) on the object effortlessly as long as one wishes, from so much acclimitization of both mind and body to meditating mental focus there arises during concentration a particular experience of pleasure to mind and body which is produced through meditative focusing called "the pleasure of a mind and body supple for use" once there have been removed the aspects of discomfort like mental uneasiness in meditating mental focus, physical sluggishness, etc. Moreover, the rough pleasure which is a possible danger to the mental focus at first becomes smaller and smaller, and finally when one obtains a special faultless focus which doesn't perceive even this rough pleasure of mind and body, it is called the attainment of actual stabilization. When there comes the attainment of the mental focus of stabilization such as this, by recourse to this one obtains the endless beneficial qualities of the (four) trances, the clairvoyances, the psychic powers, etc. common to Buddhist and non-Buddhist, and the countless virtues of the path and fruition of the three vehicles, the rudamentary, intermediate, and superior, which are not common.

### **EXERCISES**

- A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Eleven.
  - 1 वि. यवश्रास्त्र स्ट्रास्ट्रा मद्रास्त्र वादा हो।

2 विनवसार्से अन्यति अध्वाक्ति वार्ति । वार्ति । वार्ति । वार्ति ।

अस्तिरमान्त्रेम् स्ट्रिं स्ट्रिं द्वार्या स्ट्रिं स

4 श्रेम ब्रिम द्वार त्या श्रम के हूर हरमा बर पर रहना रेगा

३ स्थान्त्रीत्या

6 म्रास्ट्रिं नास्यान द्वार्या विवास्य नार्याने नेता

- १ वि.चर्यम् श्रीत्रम्यामानिकात्तेमान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्यान्त्रम्
- स्ट्रिक्स्ट्रिक्स्ट्रिस्ट्रिस्ट्रिस्ट्रिक्स्ट्रिक्स्ट्रिक्स्ट्रिस्ट्रिस्ट्रिस्ट्रिक्स्ट्रिस्ट्र
- े छ्रम्बरास्य तर् क्ष्यार् क्षानार नार नार नार नार नार नार
- 10 ए.त.म्बार्यात्म्ब्राच्यात्म्यात्म्यः स्वाद्याः स्वाद
- 11 क्रम्मा वार्क्सा निर्द्धात्र निर्द्धात्र निर्द्धात्र ता विर्द्धात्र निर्द्धात्र निर्द्धात्य निर्द्धात्र निर्द्धात्य निर्द्धात्र निर्द्ध
- 12 रावर् तह्वाय वेरवर् सेसमम्बन्धारे रेर्।
- 13 वितः में त्रिक्षेत्र वे म् प्यादे ना तर रहमाने ना व्यावे में के प्यादेश
- 14 मेलान लेवा बेराना रे रेर)
- याअसानान्त्रित्र स्वरमात्यात्यं स्वर्भन्त्र । यो त्या विकान्त्र । यो त्या विकान्त्र । यो त्या विकान्य । यो त्या विकान्य

- छेब.क.स.र्.च.तर.ररी
- 17 प्रमामानामानामाने ते ते स्वामाना केर मेर के केंद्र नार्दे पर छवना ब्रुट्ट न हिन्दी र्यटन देरी

- 13 मुक्त मानविता तक्ष्य तात्ति त्वीता चार्रु मा क्षा विद्यान्त्या न ते ते स्वा न महना ने ज जनमें ना
- W5.521
- 51 स्थाना-याचना-द्याना हुन्द्रमान् स्वान्त्र क्षित्र क्षित्र
- व्याप्तिकार्यकार्याक्षेत्रका त्यात्रे व्याप्ताक्षेत्र । व्यापत्तिक्षेत्र के. युर्दा सेरा
- 24 र्ते व वि नवसारे वर्द्ध रे में व कार्य का भवाद रे हेट रे तहें व ने र
- 25 वि. बार्डा क्रिया क्रिया क्रिया वित्र वित्र प्रति वित्र क्रिया के त्या के त्या के त्या के त्या के त्या के त \$4.9.42.2al

New honorifics in Lesson Eleven:

- 6 日紀とか、」日本人」 2 当代で、一日日かり あいしまり、「日日へ」とは、 2 当じて、一日日かり あいしまり、 2 当して、一点日子、第二日 3 あれて、一日紀とれて)
- B. Using Tibetan, each student should in turn try to elicit some new information on the subject matter of Lessons Nine, Ten, and Eleven from the teacher.

TB2.001.

Sopa, Geshe Lhundup

LECTURES ON TIBETAN RELIGIOUS CULTURE

Part I

to 274 MEL

TB2.001.

University of Wisconsin-Madison Laboratories for Recorded Instruction

